

THE STUDENTS' SERIES

UC-NRLF



\$B 290 679

NEW LATIN COMPOSITION

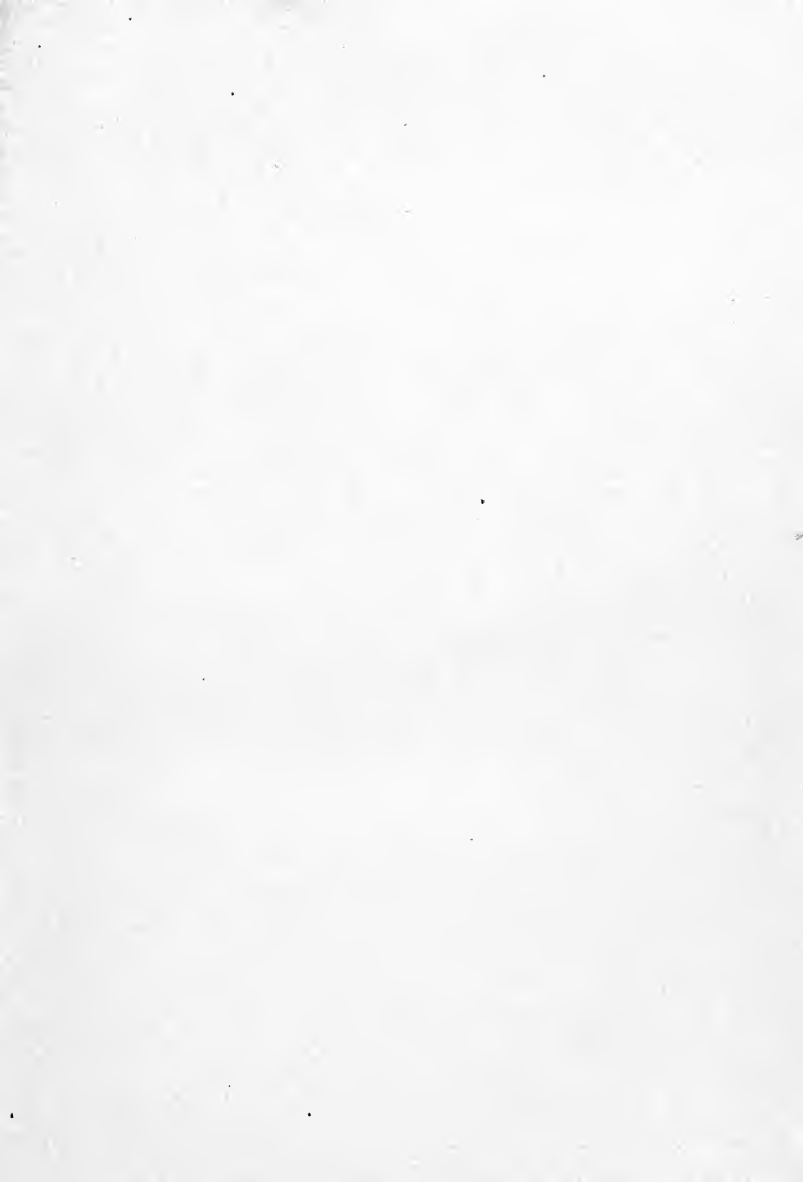
DANIELL

LIBRARY
OF THE
UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA.

GIFT OF

Prof. L. J. Richardson

Class 760
D185



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2007 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation

The Students' Series of Latin Classics

NEW

LATIN COMPOSITION

BASED MAINLY UPON CAESAR AND CICERO

BY

MOSES GRANT DANIELL

οὐ πολλ' ἀλλὰ πολὺ

BENJ. H. SANBORN & CO.

BOSTON, U.S.A.

COPYRIGHT, 1897,
By MOSES GRANT DANIELL.

Norwood Press
J. S. Cushing & Co. — Berwick & Smith
Norwood Mass. U.S.A.

PA 258
D 245
187
MAIN

PREFACE.

THIS book is a revision of the author's "Exercises in Latin Prose Composition," with certain important additions which have been suggested by his own experience and that of many of his fellow teachers. The former work was prepared "in the belief that Latin composition can best be taught directly in connection with the reading of the Latin authors. Its purpose is to furnish pupils with sufficient material for oral and written practice in Latin composition while reading Cæsar and Cicero. Its method contemplates the study and recitation of the oral exercises as a part of each day's lesson, either in the advance or the daily review (preferably the latter), and of the written exercises at stated periods corresponding to the progress of the class in the Latin text, — the important thing being to have both oral and written work done while the passages on which they are based are fresh in the mind. The text thus furnishes the vocabulary, the models for all the idioms, the principles of syntax, and the order and arrangement of words."

His own later experience, the verdict of a multitude of his fellow teachers, the attitude of the universities and colleges of highest rank, the reports of the various Latin conferences, as well as the recent flattering imitations of his text-book, afford a very convincing endorsement of this purpose and method. It is confidently expected, however, that the changes and additions that have been made in this revision will render the work still more effective.

ORAL EXERCISES.—The sentences for oral translation have been materially simplified, and special attention has been paid to idioms and phrases that occur in the text. These exercises, based on the text of the Latin authors, are so simple and so well graded as to draw lightly upon the pupil's time, while they afford a large amount of practice in composition, and insure a thorough acquaintance with the Latin text, its vocabulary, constructions, and idioms, and, more than that, furnish the best of training in forms. It is believed that the teacher who insists upon the rapid oral translation of these exercises in connection with the daily review will find that his pupils will soon acquire a happy facility in translation and a ready acquaintance with forms.

An important change will be found also in the arrangement of these oral exercises, designed to aid in a thorough and definite acquaintance with the principles of syntax. In each exercise emphatic attention has been given to one or two selected rules of syntax, instances of which occur in the text upon which it is based. In nearly every case these rules are applied in the exercise in *three or more sentences*, and other applications appear in succeeding exercises. The references to the Grammatical Index will lead the pupil to the rules and further illustrations of them in his Grammar. It is strongly recommended that the pupil commit to memory at least one illustration of every rule learned, to make still more effective this thorough special drill. Experience shows that after a little practice these oral exercises require very little time in preparation and but little of the recitation period, and they render unnecessary many questions on form and syntax. The five or ten minutes of each recitation, therefore, spent in this oral work are in no sense lost. It must not be forgotten that this kind of practice, even if it did not look forward to Latin composition as an end, is very useful, not to say necessary, in bringing the pupil to a better understanding of his Latin text. The teacher will notice that the exercises are so graded

that he may begin with either the first or second book of Cæsar.

WRITTEN EXERCISES. — But little change has been made in the exercises for written translation beyond lessening somewhat the amount, and arranging the notes on the same page with the exercises. They afford practice in writing connected discourse, and should be used weekly or at other stated periods. The teacher who follows the oral exercises day by day will find the written exercises in no way beyond the powers of his class. They will be found to be a rather careful *résumé* of the Latin author and something of a review of the week's oral work.

GRAMMATICAL REVIEW. — This is designed to furnish a thorough, systematic, final drill upon the rules of syntax, and is added at the urgent request of many practical teachers. The sentences used are the author's translations of Latin sentences taken, with a very few exceptions, from various classical sources. It is believed that these exercises will serve to crystallize the pupil's knowledge of syntax after his extensive practice in writing from Latin models. They may well be used while classes are reading Vergil and Ovid.

COLLEGE EXAMINATION PAPERS. — These are specimens of the recent entrance examination papers of several of the leading colleges and universities. They are to be used at the discretion of the teacher for sight work, or simply as tests of the pupil's attainment, and therefore are unaccompanied by notes or vocabulary.

TABLE OF SYNONYMS. — This has been added in the belief that such study as is here provided will be of great value to the student in strengthening his vocabulary by calling his attention to the distinctive meanings of many synonymous words, and thereby leading him to a better appreciation of whatever Latin

he may read. This table deals only with words that are used in the exercises and is adapted as far as possible to the needs of preparatory students.

GRAMMATICAL INDEX. — Attention is called to the arrangement of this index. Here is a fairly complete alphabetical list of the principal rules of syntax, with references to four prominent grammars. The numbers at the left margin enable the pupil to find easily the references from the exercises. Here also will be found back references to the exercises where the several rules are specially treated.

Some teachers, for lack of time, may be obliged to omit a portion of the exercises. This can be done best, without affecting the character of the training, by confining the work to Parts I. and II., or by using only alternate or selected sentences in each of the three parts. The amount of practice which the whole book offers is merely what the best interests of the pupil demand, and is not more than some colleges expect for entrance. An attempt has been made to prepare more than the usual amount of material for composition, but so easy and so well graded that it will not take more of the pupil's time and energy than other books of much more limited range.

To Prof. E. M. Pease, editor-in-chief of *The Students' Series*, I am indebted for much wise counsel and valuable aid, which he has given from time to time during the whole progress of the revision.

M. G. DANIELL.

FEBRUARY, 1897.

CONTENTS.

PART I. — CÆSAR.

	PAGE
EXERCISES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION	3
EXERCISES FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION	50

PART II. — CICERO.

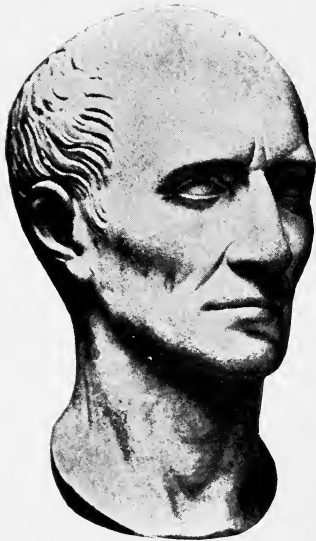
EXERCISES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION	79
EXERCISES FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION	115

PART III.

GRAMMATICAL REVIEW	133
VOCABULARY TO PART III.	162
COLLEGE ENTRANCE EXAMINATION PAPERS	183
TABLE OF SYNONYMS	193
GRAMMATICAL INDEX	205

PART I.

CÆSAR: GALLIC WAR, BOOKS I.-IV.



GAIUS IULIUS CAESAR.

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.

BOOK I.

NOTE.—Thorough preparation of the text of Cæsar ought to be sufficient preparation for these exercises. The text furnishes the vocabulary and the models of syntax, order and arrangement, idioms, etc.

NOTE.—The numbers affixed to grammar subjects at the head of sections, also those in parentheses here and there in the exercises, are references to the Grammatical Index, p. 205. Words inclosed in brackets [] are to be omitted in translation. A superior s (e.g. called^s) refers to the Table of Synonyms, p. 193.

Subject Nominative, 120. Predicate Nominative, 118.

1. Chap. 1. 1. The Garumna and the Rhine are rivers. 2. The Belgæ inhabited one part of Gaul. 3. These were called^s Gauls in our language. 4. The Helvetians also (**quoque**) are called Gauls. 5. These differ from each other. 6. We differ from each other. 7. **Of** all the Gauls the Belgæ are nearest to the Rhine. 8. And they are furthest from the province. 9. These [things] enfeeble the character. 10. Who (**quis**) surpasses^s them in courage? 11. They kept the Germans from their territories. 12. The Kelts are called Gauls. 13. They occupy one part of Gaul. 14. Gaul begins at (takes beginning from) the river Rhine. 15. The river Rhone bounds a third part of Gaul.

Ablative Absolute denoting Time, 1. Dative with Special Verbs, 71.

2. Chap. 2. 1. On one side; on the other side. 2. To extend in length, in width. 3. Messala and Piso were consuls. 4. When Messala and Piso were consuls, a conspiracy was formed. 5. Orgetorix was noble^s and

wealthy. 6. He persuaded the nobility to (**ut**) form a conspiracy. 7. They persuaded him (**eī**) to go out. 8. After the conspiracy was formed, they went forth from their boundaries. 9. This done, they made war upon the Germans. 10. The Helvetians surpass^s everybody in courage. 11. Since they surpass (*pres. subj.*) everybody, they can get possession of Gaul. 12. It is easy to go out of our boundaries. 13. I can easily persuade you of this (this to you). 14. The river is broad and deep. 15. The Helvetian land is separated from [that of] the Germans by the Rhine. 16. The Rhone separates the Helvetians from our province. 17. On the third side Helvetia is bounded by lake Geneva. 18. They were much mortified (affected with great grief). 19. Considering their glory in (of) war, they have very narrow limits. 20. They are eager for warfare (*gerund*).

Purpose Clause with **ut**, 139. Result Clause with **quīn**, 158.

3. Chap. 3. 1. To give in marriage; to exchange pledges; to be very powerful. 2. Orgetorix influenced the Helvetians by his authority. 3. They were induced to buy up wagons and pack-animals. 4. An abundance of grain was in store. 5. Peace and friendship were established with their neighbors. 6. These preparations (things) were completed in two years (**bienniō**). 7. After these preparations were completed (*abl. abs.*), he seized the throne. 8. After they had bought up wagons and pack-animals, they established peace with their neighbors. 9. They chose Orgetorix to do this thing. 10. Orgetorix is called a friend. 11. He persuaded Casticus to seize the throne. 12. Casticus was son of Catamantalœdes. 13. It is not doubtful that he holds (*pres. subj.*) the supremacy.

14. There is no doubt that they were influenced (*per. subj.*) by this speech. 15. There is no doubt that this speech influenced them. 16. It was not doubtful that the Helvetians were very powerful. 17. They can get possession of all Gaul.

Infinitive as Subject, **111**. Impersonal Verbs, **100**.

4. Chap. 4. 1. To commit suicide. 2. Orgetorix pleaded his cause in (from) chains. 3. Punishment must follow. 4. You must be burned^s with fire. 5. There is no doubt that he pleaded his cause in chains. 6. That he might be rescued, all his household was conducted to the same place. 7. It behooves us to maintain our rights. 8. When he had pleaded his cause (*abl. abs.*), he died. 9. A multitude of men was collected by (*ā*) the magistrates. 10. Orgetorix committed suicide.

Accusative Subject of Infinitive, **31, 106**. Tenses of the Infinitive, **113**.

5. Chap. 5. 1. They went forth from their boundaries; from home. 2. I think you are ready for that undertaking (thing). 3. They think he is ready. 4. He thinks they were ready. 5. They have set fire to their towns, about six in number. 6. They returned (*redeō*) home (**30**). 7. They did this to take away the hope of returning (a return) home. 8. It behooved them to burn^s up the grain. 9. We shall adopt (use) the same plan. 10. They persuaded the Boii to besiege Noreia.

Roman Calendar, **159**. Ablative of Quality, **18**. Ablative of Time, **22**.

6. Chap. 6. 1. To be well disposed towards one (*aliquem*). 2. They could go out from home by two routes. 3. With difficulty they dragged their wagons one at a

time. 4. The road^s through the province is free from obstacles (*pos. of expeditius*). 5. The Roman people were not well disposed towards the Allobroges. 6. They thought that the Helvetians were well disposed towards them (*sē*). 7. You are not well disposed towards me. 8. Permit^s them to go over the bridge. 9. On that day (*masc.*), which was March 28, they assembled at (to) the banks of the Rhone. 10. On the 29th of March they crossed the river. 11. On the 1st of April, they were (it behooved them) to go through the province. 12. The river was fordable (crossed by a ford) in several places.

Order of Words, 122. Emphasis, 74.

7. Chap. 7. 1. To inform one; to be informed. 2. To arrive at; to remember; to march. 3. Cæsar departed from *the city*. 4. The bridge was broken down. 5. *Cæsar* was informed about the march of the Helvetians. 6. Who (*quis*) informed the Helvetians of Cæsar's arrival? 7. It is my intention (in mind to me) to break down the bridge. 8. What (*quid*) was the intention of the Helvetians? 9. They marched through the *province*. 10. *May* we (is it permitted to us to) do this? 11. *You* may take a day for deliberation (*gerund*). 12. They are people of an *unfriendly* disposition. 13. Return on the 13th of April. 14. When the opportunity was given, they assembled. 15. They all returned on the 10th of April.

Genitive of Quality (Measure), 79.

8. Chap. 8. 1. Against his (my, etc.) will, — if he (etc.) is unwilling. 2. Disappointed in this hope. 3. Meanwhile the soldiers were assembling from the province. 4. Cæsar had *one* legion with him. 5. [There] was one legion

with him (*not sē*). 6. I have *five* legions with me. 7. The wall was fifteen feet in height. 8. They were attempting^s to cross against *Cæsar's* will. 9. They cannot cross, if the enemy are unwilling. 10. The river is twenty feet in depth. 11. He cannot grant a passage to any one. 12. He said that the day had not come. 13. He says that he cannot prevent^s them. 14. He will be disappointed in his hope.

Ablative Absolute denoting Condition, 1.

9. Chap. 9. 1. To be very (most) powerful; to marry (a woman). 2. Revolution, change; to exchange. 3. If you are unwilling, we cannot go through the pass. 4. The pass is one hundred feet in width. 5. If Dumnorix is our intercessor, we can persuade the *Æduans*. 6. Whose daughter did he marry? 7. Dumnorix was friendly to the *Helvetians*. 8. Orgetorix is desirous of a change [in government]. 9. They exchange hostages. 10. We exchanged hostages. 11. If hostages are given, they can go.

Dative with Compounds, 64.

10. Chap. 10. 1. To intend. What (*quid*) do you intend to do? 2. It is [attended] with great danger to the province to have (157) the *Helvetians* [for] neighbors. 3. For these reasons he intends to hasten into Italy. 4. He had been wintering in Further Gaul. 5. He put a lieutenant over these legions. 6. Then he made war upon (*bellum inferō*) the *Ceutrones*. 7. What fortification did he put *Labienu*s in command of? 8. If higher positions are occupied, we can defeat^s the enemy. 9. Three legions were enrolled there. 10. These were defeated in (by) battle.

Supine in **-um**, 169. Dative of Agent, 63.

11. Chap. 11. 1. Ambassadors were sent to ask for aid^s. 2. Our towns ought not to be stormed. 3. We have asked for aid. 4. Our fields have been devastated. 5. At the same time our children were led into slavery. 6. They said that their children had been led into slavery. 7. We have come to remind (**moneō**) you. 8. They had come to lay waste the fields. 9. We must not wait; you must not wait; they must not wait. 10. Inform Labienus that he must not wait.

Perfect Passive Participle (Abl. Abs.) for English Perf.
Act. Part., 125.

12. Chap. 12. 1. In the third watch; not only . . . but also. 2. In which direction does the Rhone flow? 3. The scouts informed Cæsar that one part of the forces had crossed the river. 4. Having killed the consul, they sent his army under the yoke. 5. Having sent his army under the yoke, they put him to death. 6. They not only killed the consul, but also sent his army under the yoke. 7. Cassius was killed in the same battle with (in which) Piso. 8. Whose grandfather was Piso? 9. Having led the army over the river, he attacked the enemy. 10. Having brought disaster upon the state, he paid the penalty.

Gerundive to denote Purpose, 92.

13. Chap. 13. 1. To have a thing done; the war with Cassius; to build a bridge. 2. He has the army led over the Arar. 3. He has ambassadors sent to the Helvetians. 4. He had a bridge built. 5. Cæsar can overtake the Helvetians. 6. Having sent ambassadors to him, they waited (**expectō**). 7. Cæsar crossed the river in one

day. 8. *They* accomplished that [feat] in ten days. 9. Remember that old defeat (88). 10. You attacked^s us [when we were] crossing the river. 11. We rely upon our own (**noster**) valor rather than upon treachery (12).

Genitive with Verbs of Memory, 88. Ablative of Degree, 7.

14. Chap. 14. 1. They feel very indignant. 2. These things have not happened according to our deserts (3). 3. The less they have happened according to our deserts, the more indignant we feel. 4. The less I am conscious of [doing] wrong, the more difficult is it to be on my guard. 5. Why do you boast of your victory (5)? 6. Cæsar felt indignant because (49) the Helvetians harassed the Æduans. 7. The immortal gods are wont (*perf.*) to punish^s men for their crimes.^s 8. Sometimes the gods grant us prosperity. 9. The Helvetians cannot forget the old disgrace. 10. We sometimes forget our prosperity. 11. The Roman people never forgot injuries.

Ablative of Place, 14, 15. Ablative of Separation, 19.

15. Chap. 15. 1. The rear (of an army); for the present. 2. In what direction? To make a bolder stand. 3. Cæsar moved his camp from that place. 4. A few of (from) the Helvetians joined battle in an unfavorable place. 5. With (by means of) a few of our horsemen we drove a multitude of theirs. 6. Occasionally they make a much (by much) bolder stand. 7. You did not restrain your men from battle. 8. It was enough to harass the enemy's rear. 9. Cæsar kept his men from foraging. 10. He kept himself in his own place. 11. The camp was pitched (**pōnō**) in a suitable (**idōneus**) place. 12. Don't you consider this enough for the present?

Ablative with *ūtor*, 24.

16. Chap. 16. 1. Cæsar daily^s demanded grain of the Æduans. 2. No fodder is at hand, and the crops are not ripe. 3. Moreover we cannot use^s the grain which we brought up on the Arar. 4. They did not use the fodder. 5. We do not wish to turn our course from the Arar. 6. The day is at hand. 7. The leaders must (*oportet*) be called together. 8. What sort of (*quālis*) power^s had Liscus over his [people]? 9. He was at the head of the magistracy. 10. The enemy are near. 11. Liscus complained because (49) he was not relieved.

Sequence of Tenses, 160. Adverbial Accusative, 25.

17. Chap. 17. 1. Liscus is much more powerful than even (*ipse*) Divitiacus. 2. His authority has great weight among the common people. 3. They were influenced by Cæsar's argument. 4. Liscus stated what he ought (*perf.*) not to have stated (*pres.*). 5. We ought^s not to use violent language. 6. Our influence will have less (*minus*) weight. 7. I doubt not that they will collect the grain. 8. We do not doubt that the Romans conquered the Helvetians. 9. Liscus did not doubt that his plans had been disclosed. 10. Nay even, he disclosed the matter on compulsion. 11. I will keep still as long as I can (*fut.*).

Ablative of Price, 17.

18. Chap. 18. 1. On his own account; to have the highest hopes. 2. On inquiry (93); a few days before (before by a few days). 3. Dumnorix was pointed at by Liscus. 4. I do not doubt that Dumnorix was pointed at. 5. These matters were discussed in the presence of

Liscus. 6. Dumnorix is [a man] of great generosity (18). 7. I hate Dumnorix on my own account. 8. He purchased the revenues at a low price. 9. Revenues were purchased at a high (*māgnus*) price. 10. When you bid (*abl. abs.*), nobody dares to bid against you. 11. Who is more powerful than Dumnorix?

Substantive Clause of Purpose, 141.

19. Chap. 19. 1. Without his orders; without his (my, etc.) knowledge. 2. In his presence; reason enough. 3. Cæsar had Dumnorix summoned before him. 4. All these things were done without Cæsar's knowledge. 5. They did this without your knowledge. 6. They will do this without his (*ēius*) orders. 7. What did he say in your presence about Valerius? 8. What did you say in my presence about Divitiacus? 9. He urged him to (*ut*) punish Dumnorix. 10. I urge you to converse with him. 11. He urges them to accuse him.

Interrogative Sentences with *ne*, *nōnne*, *num*, 147. Ablative of Manner, 10.

20. Chap. 20. 1. Love for [one's] brother; all grounds of suspicion. 2. Are these things true? 3. Has he not very great power? 4. Is he influenced by love for his brother? 5. What has happened^s to him? 6. No one feels more (of) pain than I. 7. Did Divitiacus weep? 8. Did he not embrace Cæsar with deep emotion (many tears)? 9. I know that I myself have very little power. 10. He begged him to stop (make an end of) weeping. 11. Have done with your entreaties. 12. I shall do this with Cæsar's consent. 13. Don't you know what he has done (*perf. subj.*)? 14. If anything happens (*fut.*) to him, it will be done with your consent.

Ablative of Time, **22**. Superlatives, etc., denoting a Part, **39**.

21. Chaps. 21, 22. 1. At daybreak; late in the day; on that day. 2. About the third watch; at the usual interval; at full speed. 3. What is the character of the mountain? 4. They ascended the mountain by the same road^s that (by which) Considius [did]. 5. Is not Considius skilled in military affairs (76)? 6. At daybreak Labienus held the top of the mountain. 7. Considius said that the enemy held it. 8. At that time Considius was thoroughly scared. 9. What is your design? 10. Did Labienus seize the middle (**medius**) of the hill? 11. On the same day the enemy followed him. 12. Was the mountain held by the enemy?

In and sub with Accusative and Ablative, **102**. Ablative of Agent, **4**.

22. Chaps. 23, 24. 1. On the next day; on the day before. 2. It was necessary^s to turn their course^s away from the enemy^s. 3. The Helvetians thought^s that the Romans were panic-stricken. 4. On that day the cavalry withstood the enemy's attack. 5. Meanwhile four veteran legions were drawn up in(to) line. 6. The knapsacks were collected in(to) one place. 7. Then they made an attack on the enemy. 8. The soldiers were stationed by Labienus half-way up the hill (in the middle hill). 9. The top of the mountain was covered with baggage. 10. Forming a phalanx, they advanced half-way up the hill (up to the middle hill). 11. The hill was fortified by those who were enlisted last. 12. The baggage was collected by our [men] at the foot of (under) the hill.

Dative of Purpose, **68**.

23. Chap. 25. 1. Cæsar removed the horses in order to equalize the danger. 2. Having taken away all hope

of flight, he encouraged his men. 3. Having hurled their javelins, they drew their swords. 4. Swords were drawn by the soldiers. 5. It is (for) a great hindrance to us that our shields are fastened together. 6. Was it a small hindrance to us that the left hand was shackled? 7. Can you fight to advantage with your left hand shackled? 8. Fall back and withdraw to the mountain. 9. At length they fell back and withdrew to the middle of the mountain. 10. The Boii were a protection to [those in] the rear.

Passive of Intransitive Verbs used Impersonally, 101. **Alter, 46.**

24. Chap. 26. 1. Long and fiercely they fought^s. 2. They fought till late at night. 3. One party withstood the attack, the other could not. 4. The battle raged till evening. 5. There is fighting at the foot of the mountain. 6. Weapons^s were hurled at our men as they advanced (coming). 7. Orgetorix had two daughters, one of whom was captured by Cæsar. 8. The wagons served as (were) a defence (**praesidium**) for the enemy. 9. I hold you in the same estimation as [I do] Orgetorix. 10. Cæsar holds you in the same estimation as [he does] the Helvetians.

Cum-temporal, 172. Ablative Absolute denoting Condition, 1.

25. Chap. 27. 1. In the early part of the night; to punish. 2. When they met Cæsar, they sued for peace weeping. 3. When they had arrived (it had been arrived) there (thither), they waited for Cæsar's arrival. 4. When they were ordered to assemble, they obeyed. 5. The slaves escaped to Cæsar. 6. Search for the arms and collect them. 7. If we give up the hostages, Cæsar will

demand^s our arms. 8. One party waited for his (*not suus*) arrival, the other hastened to the Rhine. 9. If we give up our arms,^s we shall be punished. 10. Early in the night they gave up their arms.

Dative of Reference, 69. Conjunctions omitted, 60.

26. Chap. 28. 1. At home; to receive into an equal condition . . . with themselves. 2. Search them out and bring them back. 3. If you wish to be exculpated in my sight, bring them back. 4. When (*cum*) they had brought them back, they were exculpated in his sight. 5. If you bring them back (*abl. abs.*), you will be exculpated in my sight. 6. Hostages, arms [and] refugees were delivered up. 7. The Helvetians returned to the territories they had started from (whence they had started). 8. We have nothing at home. 9. He ordered (*iubeō*, 115) them to furnish a supply of grain. 10. He ordered (*imperō*) them to rebuild their towns. 11. Are not the Boii men of extraordinary valor?

Dative with Special Verbs, 71.

27. Chap. 30. 1. Advantageous to Gaul, to us (*nostrō*). 2. To inflict punishment on. 3. Leading men of all Gaul congratulated Cæsar (*dat.*). 4. He had inflicted punishment upon the Helvetians. 5. Although (*tametsi*, 52) he had inflicted punishment upon them, still ambassadors came to congratulate him. 6. It is advantageous to us to do this. 7. May we (is it permitted to us to) do this? 8. You may do this. 9. They beg permission (that it may be permitted) to select any abode. 10. They come to sue for (*supine*, 169) peace. 11. I have certain things that I wish to ask^s of you. 12. They were permitted to do this (this thing was permitted to them).

Result Clause with **ut**, 155. Accusative of Limit, 30.

28. Chap. 31. 1. The children of all the nobles; to be put to torture. 2. As soon as; all kinds of cruelty. 3. May we treat with you about our own safety? 4. Was not this request granted (thing obtained)? 5. When they had treated with him, their request was granted. 6. They accomplished what (those things which) they wished. 7. They were not put to torture. 8. We have come to demand^s (169) aid. 9. They cast themselves at Cæsar's feet. 10. We cast ourselves at your feet. 11. The Æduans hold the supremacy in (of) one of the parties, the Arverni in the other. 12. It came to pass that about twelve thousand crossed the Rhine. 13. The result will be (**futūrum est**) that they will meet with (receive, *pres. subj.*) a great disaster. 14. In a few years we shall be driven out of Gaul. 15. Divitiacus came to Rome to the senate. 16. Then he returned to Magetobria. 17. He demanded as hostages the children of all the nobles. 18. I do not doubt that Cæsar returned to Rome.

Indirect Questions, 146.

29. Chap. 32. 1. To make no reply (26); not even in secret; not even this; not even Cæsar. 2. Divitiacus made a speech. 3. The Sequanians with bowed heads sadly (*adj.*, 40) looked upon the ground. 4. They sought aid with many tears (great weeping). 5. What was the cause of this behavior (**rēs**)? 6. I wonder what the reason was. 7. He wondered what they were doing. 8. He wondered why (**cūr**) they made no reply. 9. We do not dare even to complain. 10. It came to pass that our lot was harder than theirs.

Dative with Adjectives, 62.

30. Chap. 33. 1. Why did he dismiss the council? 2. Do you know (*scisne*) why he dismissed the council? 3. Cæsar promised to encourage (*fut. inf.*) them. 4. This will be my care (for care to me). 5. I have great hopes that Cæsar will dismiss the council. 6. Ariovistus was induced to put an end to his injuries. 7. It is most disgraceful to the Roman people that the Æduans should be under the sway of Ariovistus. 8. It is disgraceful to Cæsar and the republic. 9. It will be dangerous to the Gauls to go into Italy. 10. Moreover the Germans will get used to crossing the Rhine.

Relative Clause of Purpose, 143.

31. Chap. 34. 1. I am determined to (it pleases me that I) send ambassadors. 2. Ambassadors were sent to treat with Ariovistus. 3. Cæsar sends an ambassador to select a place. 4. A place midway between the two (middle of both) was selected. 5. Ariovistus sent an ambassador to reply. 6. It is most disgraceful for you to come into Gaul. 7. What (of) business have you (is there to you) in Gaul anyhow? 8. I am at a loss to understand (it seems strange to me) what business Cæsar has in Gaul. 9. The [part of] Gaul which I have conquered is mine. 10. I will not come to you.

Objective Genitive, 80.

32. Chap. 35. 1. A matter of general interest. 2. To make return, — show gratitude. 3. These replies were reported to Cæsar. 4. You have been treated with great kindness by me (by my great kindness). 5. What a return you are making to the Roman people! 6. This is what I demand^s of you. 7. Return the hostages that you

have. 8. This can be done with advantage to (of) the state. 9. You will have lasting friendship with Cæsar. 10. I have favor with you (*not cum tē*). 11. Whoever shall hold the province will defend our friends. 12. I shall not overlook the injuries done to the Æduans (*gen.*). 13. Cæsar did not overlook the injuries done by the Helvetians to the Roman people (see chap. xxx., line 4). 14. Ambassadors were sent to demand a reply.

Relative of Cause or Reason, 51.

33. Chap. 36. 1. The name of brother. 2. Ariovistus did not make war upon the Æduans. 3. You govern those whom you have conquered just as you wish. 4. I govern the conquered according to my own judgment. 5. You ought not to obstruct me in my rights. 6. You do a great wrong in making (who make) the Æduans your tributaries. 7. He did a great wrong in obstructing Ariovistus. 8. They do a very great wrong in not paying tribute. 9. No one contends with Ariovistus except to (without) his own ruin^s. 10. Come on when you will (shall wish). 11. You will find^s out that the Germans are well skilled in arms. 12. You ought not to overlook the wrongs done to the Æduans.

Second Periphrastic Conjugation, 128.

34. Chaps. 37, 38. 1. Resistance is made (it is resisted); resistance cannot easily be made. 2. Forced marches night and day. 3. I have come to complain (*sup.*) because the Harudes have been brought over into Gaul. 4. Not even by giving hostages (*abl. abs.*) could they purchase peace. 5. We (*dat.*) must hasten lest the Suevi unite with Ariovistus. 6. There is need of haste. 7. We must take great precautions that this may not

happen^s (*neg. purpose*). 8. There is everything in Vesontio that is useful (for use) for war. 9. The river touches the base of the mountain on either side. 10. The Harudes complained of having been brought (*a quod-clause*, 49) into Gaul.

Ut with Verbs of Fearing, 142.

35. Chap. 39. 1. For the sake^s of supplies; on account^s of friendship. 2. Traders asserted that the Germans were [men] of immense size (of bodies). 3. They had had frequent encounters (had frequently met) with them. 4. There ought to be frequent encounters with them. 5. One assigned one reason and another another (46). 6. To avoid (*not inf.*) suspicion of fear I shall remain. 7. When you (shall) order the advance of the standards (standards to be carried), the soldiers will not obey. 8. I am afraid that supplies cannot be brought up. 9. I fear^s that you will not keep back the tears. 10. They were afraid that they could not control their countenances.

Double Questions, 145. Passive of Verbs that take the Dative, 101.

36. Chap. 40. 1. He (*eī*) is persuaded; they are persuaded. 2. To break camp; insurrection of slaves. 3. In what direction; on account^s of mismanagement. 4. You ought^s not to inquire (*impers.*) in what direction you are led. 5. I am persuaded that (*use acc. and inf.*) Ariovistus will not reject the terms. 6. An insurrection of slaves, who made war on the Roman people, lately took place. 7. Can you not judge from this how much (of) advantage firmness has? 8. The Helvetians are the same men with whom we have had frequent encounters. 9. Ariovistus did not give them a chance at him (make power of him-

self). 10. You are acting presumptuously since you (*rel. of cause*) are dictating to your commander. 11. Does duty or fear prevail with you? 12. I wish to find^s out whether duty or fear prevails with you. 13. Does he hope or despair? 14. Are they armed or unarmed? 15. Cæsar was afraid that they would not advance (carry the standards).

Gerundive (Genitive and Accusative), 90, 92.

37. Chap. 41. 1. To return (give) thanks to any one (*alicui*). 2. In a wonderful manner. 3. The rest of the legions. 4. To have great confidence in any one. 5. We shall return thanks^s to Cæsar. 6. They have the greatest eagerness to carry on the war. 7. He is ready to lead the army. 8. We are quite ready (*superl.*) to carry on the war. 9. Then the rest^s of the legions apologized to Cæsar. 10. Cæsar was ready to accept their apology, 11. because he was eager (*cupidus*) to set out. 12. The decision about the war does not belong to us (is not ours) but to you. 13. We have neither doubted nor feared. 14. Did we doubt or fear?

Nē with Verbs of Fearing, 142.

38. Chap. 42. 1. To entertain (have) great hopes; back and forth, — to and fro. 2. That may be done as far as I am concerned. 3. When I requested^s (to me requesting) this, you refused. 4. I entertain great hopes that you will approach nearer. 5. Ariovistus fears^s that he will be surrounded by Cæsar. 6. He feared that Cæsar would come with cavalry. 7. I shall not come on [any] other^s terms. 8. I am afraid of being (lest I be) surrounded. 9. The most expedient [way] is to take away the horses from the Gauls (*dat.*, 70).

Deliberative Subjunctive, 164.

39. Chap. 43. 1. When they had come there. 2. To snatch away anything from any one. 3. To convey on horseback; to converse on horseback. 4. They saw a mound^s of earth in a plain. 5. We shall take to the conference eight apiece besides ourselves. 6. They conferred on horseback. 7. Who could endure^s this? 8. Who would make these demands (demand these things)? 9. Who would not wish his friends to be advanced in honor? 10. Have you any good reason for (of) demanding such a favor (that thing)? 11. Then he made the same demands as (which) before. 12. Do not (131) make war upon the Aeduans. 13. He feared that Germans would cross the Rhine. 14. And he did not wish any (*ullus*) Germans to cross that river.

Participle denoting Cause, 123. Ablative "in accordance with," 3.

40. Chap. 44. 1. To reply briefly; up to that time. 2. Without being asked; to hold one (*aliquem*) as a friend. 3. He took tribute according to the laws^s (*sing.*) of war. 4. I did not cross the Rhine of my own accord. 5. I abandoned^s my home at your request (having been requested by you). 6. I crossed the Rhine because I was summoned. 7. I did not come without being asked. 8. They paid tribute of their own free-will. 9. The friendship of the Roman people ought to be an honor (*dat.*) to me. 10. I led the Germans over the Rhine for the sake (*causā*) of strengthening myself. 11. This part of Gaul is mine, just as the Province is yours. 12. Who could be so^s simple as (*ut*) not to know that Cæsar's friendship is pretended? 13. If Ariovistus should kill (54) Cæsar, he would do a favor to many Romans.

Gerund (Genitive), 90. **Dum** with Present Indicative, 72.

41. Chaps. 45, 46. 1. To this effect (purport); priority of time (each most ancient time). 2. It is not Cæsar's habit to desert^s his allies. 3. It is not his habit to allow^s his allies to be deserted (*use ut*). 4. The Roman people will not allow him to desert their allies. 5. Priority of time ought not to be regarded. 6. Cæsar stopped talking. 7. The enemy did not stop throwing stones. 8. While the horsemen were riding up, stones were thrown at us. 9. They rode up for the purpose (*causā*) of throwing stones. 10. While these things were going on, Ariovistus approached nearer. 11. Because stones were thrown (*abl. abs.*) at us we had (there was to us) greater desire to fight. 12. After (*posteaquam*, 174) the attack was made, Cæsar broke off the conference.

Ablative of Degree, 7.

42. Chap. 47. 1. Three days afterwards Ariovistus treated with Cæsar a second time. 2. If you do not wish to appoint a day, send one (*aliquem*) of (*ex*) your officers. 3. There is no reason for hurling weapons. 4. The more^s so (more by this) because there is no danger. 5. Gaius, son of Gaius, was a young man of the greatest refinement. 6. Ariovistus spoke (used) the Gallic language fluently (much). 7. It seems much more expedient to present Flaccus with citizenship. 8. On account^s of your knowledge of Latin (*lingua Latīna*), I shall enjoy your hospitality. 9. What are you coming to me for (what for = why)? 10. To report (for the sake of reporting) things to Cæsar? 11. What did Ariovistus say in the presence of his army? 12. Mettius found out what Ariovistus said (*not subj.*) and reported [it] to Cæsar.

Conditional Sentences: (Future Conditions) First form, 53; Second form, 54.

43. Chaps. 48, 49. 1. On the same day; on the next day. 2. On the day before; for five days. 3. In these days; from that day; daily^s. 4. If you wish to contend in battle, you will not lack the opportunity (power will not be wanting to you). 5. If you should wish . . . you would not lack. 6. They selected foot-soldiers one apiece (*use singulī singulōs*). 7. If he falls (shall fall) off his horse, they will surround him. 8. If he should fall off his horse, they would surround him. 9. If anything serious happens, these run together. 10. There (thither) Ariovistus sent all his cavalry to frighten Cæsar's army. 11. Nevertheless (less by nothing) the enemy was repelled.

Double Questions, 145.

44. Chaps. 50, 51. 1. Not even then; not even on the next day; not even the opportunity to fight. 2. The smaller camp was attacked^s. 3. The reason why he does not fight is because it is new moon. 4. Was it new moon or not (*annōn*)? 5. If you contend (*fut.*) before new moon, you will not conquer^s. 6. If you should contend, you would not conquer. 7. Shall we contend (*pres. subj.*) in battle or not? 8. The matrons declared^s whether or not the Germans would (were about to) conquer. 9. Cæsar used the auxiliaries for show. 10. With tears we implore you not to go into the battle.

Relative of Characteristic, 149.

45. Chaps. 52, 53. 1. On the right wing, — left wing; time (space) for hurling javelins. 2. To stop fleeing; the one . . . the other. 3. Cæsar put a quæstor over

each legion. 4. When our line was hard pressed on the right wing, the enemy's line was defeated on the left. 5. Several were found who threw away their javelins. 6. There were [some] who made the attack with swords. 7. There are [those] who run forward quickly. 8. Crassus was sent as (for) a relief^s to the third line. 9. Ariovistus escaped in (by) a boat that he had found (*part.*). 10. One (46) of his two wives was captured and slain. 11. It afforded (brought to) Cæsar great pleasure that his friend was restored to him. 12. Shall he be immediately burned^s (*pres. subj.*) or reserved for another time?



BOOK II.

Ablative of Agent, 4. Sequence of Tenses, 160.

46. Chap. 1. 1. To inform; to be informed. 2. To exchange hostages; to be annoyed, — vexed; changes in government. 3. Cæsar was informed by rumors; by Labienus. 4. Labienus informed him. 5. All the Belgæ were exchanging hostages. 6. These are the reasons for (of) conspiring. 7. They fear that our army will be led against them. 8. They feared that our army would be led against them. 9. The Belgæ were instigated by the Gauls. 10. We are annoyed. 11. In Gaul men are hired by the powerful. 12. What reasons were [there] for (of) wintering in Gaul?

Apposition, 48.

47. Chap. 2. 1. As soon as; in the beginning of summer. 2. These messages alarmed Cæsar. 3. Two

legions were enrolled. 4. They were led into Gaul by Quintus Pedius. 5. Cæsar, the commander (*imperātor*), sent Pedius, the lieutenant. 6. Pedius, the lieutenant, was sent by Cæsar, the commander. 7. What is going on among the Belgæ? 8. He gave it in charge to Pedius, the lieutenant, to find out. 9. Bands are collecting (*pass.*). 10. These are the reasons for (of) enrolling two legions.

Adjectives used as Nouns, **41**. Relative of Purpose, **143**.

48. Chap. 3. 1. Unexpectedly; sooner than any one would suppose. 2. Ambassadors are sent to say; were sent to say. 3. The Remi sent ambassadors to aid Cæsar. 4. Ourselves and all our [property] we intrust to you. 5. We have not conspired with the Belgæ. 6. We are ready to give hostages. 7. Iccius and Andocumborius, chief men of the state, were sent as ambassadors. 8. They did his bidding. 9. They aided him with grain. 10. All the Belgæ are in arms. 11. They have united (themselves) with the Germans. 12. So great was their madness that they united (*perf. subj.*, **161**) with the Germans. 13. They used the same laws.

Accusative with Infinitive, **31**. Indirect Discourse, **106**.
Indirect Questions, **146**.

49. Chap. 4. 1. To be very strong, — have great influence; not only . . . but also. 2. What states are in arms? 3. He asked them what states were in arms. 4. What can they [do] in war? 5. They asked him what he could [do] in war. 6. Most of the Belgæ sprang from the Germans. 7. They were led over the Rhine. 8. It is said that they were led over the Rhine. 9. The Gauls were expelled. 10. He found out that the Gauls

had been expelled. 11. How large a number have they promised? 12. He will find out how large a number each has promised. 13. The Bellovaci have great influence because^s of their valor. 14. They claim for themselves the command. 15. The Nervii were furthest off. 16. They were regarded [as] extremely cruel.

Genitive with **Interest**, 85.

50. Chap. 5. 1. To pitch camp; to address in generous language. 2. The whole senate met him. 3. The children^s of the leaders were brought to him (*not sē*). 4. They did all things promptly. 5. It greatly concerns the common safety. 6. The bands of the enemy are kept apart. 7. It is for the interest of the state to separate the forces of the enemy. 8. It is for the interest of the Remi to send scouts. 9. These instructions were given (things were ordered^s). 10. By this time (already) the troops were not far off. 11. Supplies can be brought to Cæsar without danger. 12. [There] was a ditch ten feet (*gen.*) in depth.

Accusative of Extent, 29. Complementary Infinitive, 109.

51. Chap. 6. 1. It is for the interest of the state to send a message to Cæsar. 2. The town is ten miles from the river. 3. The river is eight miles from the town. 4. They threw stones a hundred (**centum**) paces. 5. Stones were hurled against the wall. 6. The town began^s to be cleared of soldiers. 7. A great multitude began to hurl stones. 8. Iccius was a man of great influence among the Remi. 9. One of (from) the ambassadors came to Cæsar. 10. They cannot hold out longer.

Ablative of Comparison, 6. Ablative of Degree, 7.

52. Chap. 7. 1. About midnight; for the same reason. 2. Cæsar used the messengers as guides (*appositive*). 3. Archers and slingers were sent as a reinforcement (*dat.*) to the townsmen. 4. On the arrival of the archers, hope of defence left the Remi. 5. All the villages were burned^s. 6. The camp was pitched three miles off; less than three miles off; more than three miles off.

Partitive Genitive, 81.

53. Chap. 8. 1. On each side; the ends of the trenches. 2. So much (of) space; reputation for valor; to act as (be for) a reserve. 3. He deferred the battle. 4. Our men are not inferior to the enemy (*abl.*). 5. The place was suitable for (*ad*) a cavalry skirmish. 6. There is as much space as a line of battle can occupy. 7. How much space does a line of battle occupy? 8. Near the ends of the trenches redoubts were constructed. 9. Why (*cūr*) did he leave men (soldiers) in camp? 10. If there is need of anything (13), they will come.

Conditional Sentences, First Form, 53. Note that in the text the conditional sentences are in indirect discourse.

54. Chap. 9. 1. The army is between the marsh and the hill. 2. They began (*initium faciō*) to cross. 3. Why (*cūr*) did our men wait? 4. To attack^s the enemy [when] obstructed. 5. There is a contest between our men and the enemy. 6. The cavalry skirmish was favorable to neither [side]. 7. If they can (*fut.*), they will take the redoubt. 8. If they take the redoubt, they will destroy the bridge. 9. If they cannot do this, they will keep^s our men from supplies. 10. They led over a part of their forces.

Dative with Intransitive Verbs (Passive), 71, 101.

55. Chap. 10. 1. Light-armed Numidians were led over the bridge. 2. A fierce battle took place. 3. Cæsar learned from (was informed by) Titurius that Numidians were crossing the bridge. 4. A great^s number of Numidians were slain (*sing.*) by the cavalry. 5. If they cross (*fut.*) the river they will be repulsed. 6. They will be disappointed in their hopes. 7. Each one returned to his own home. 8. He persuades them to delay. 9. They are persuaded to cross. 10. They cannot be persuaded to wait longer. 11. You cannot be persuaded to render aid. 12. They defended their own territories rather than others'.

Ablative of Manner, 10.

56. Chap. 11. 1. The rear (of an army); at daybreak; toward sunset; for what reason? 2. They left (departed from) their camp with great tumult. 3. Everybody (each) sought the first place. 4. They reached (arrived) home in the second watch. 5. With a loud (great^s) shout they attacked the rear. 6. With great danger they withdrew (*sē recipere*) to camp. 7. For what reason did Cæsar keep his army in camp? 8. The leaders were out of (away from) danger. 9. They had been commanded (*im-personal*) to withdraw to the camp.

Participle denoting Concession, Cause, and Time, 123. Ablative Absolute, 1.

57. Chaps. 12, 13. 1. On the march; the elders. 2. On the next day the enemy recovered (themselves) from their alarm. 3. He could not take the town although there were few defenders. 4. Although he attempted^s to take it, he could not. 5. The two sons of the king were received as hostages. 6. When the towers were set up, the

Gauls were alarmed. 7. They gave up their arms because they were alarmed. 8. When they had given up their arms their surrender was accepted (they were received into surrender). 9. While Cæsar was pitching (*pres. part.*) camp, the elders came out of the town. 10. They stretched out their hands after their manner.

Indirect Discourse, 106. Tenses of the Infinitive, 113. Ablative and Genitive of Quality, 18, 78.

58. Chaps. 14, 15. 1. Not only . . . but also; both . . . and; out of respect to Divitiacus. 2. I will be spokesman (make words) in your behalf. 3. I know that he has inflicted great loss upon the state. 4. Divitiacus said that the Æduans would collect (*fut. inf.*) their arms. 5. They have (are of) great influence among the Belgæ. 6. Cæsar said that he would show (use) his characteristic (own) kindness. 7. That he was a man of great kindness. 8. And that out of respect to the Æduans he would spare them. 9. When the hostages were delivered, they collected the arms. 10. Although Cæsar showed kindness towards them, he demanded five hundred hostages. 11. Cæsar made inquiries (asked^s) about the habits of the Nervii. 12. Traders (*dat.*) have no access to them. 13. They are men of the greatest courage.

Cum-temporal, 172. *Amplius* etc. without *quam*, 47.

59. Chaps. 16, 17. 1. Up to this time; to march, advance. 2. By reason of age [some] men are useless for battle. 3. Into what place had they put the women? 4. Cæsar learned that the Nervii had put the children in the marshes. 5. From whom did he learn this? 6. The river is more than ten miles off. 7. The army marched more than five miles. 8. When the first legion was com-

ing into camp the Nervii attacked it. 9. When the Nervii had encamped on the other side of the river, they awaited Cæsar's arrival. 10. There will be no (*nihil*) trouble in plundering (to plunder) the baggage-train. 11. The other legions are a great way off. 12. While the troops were on the march, they dared not attack the enemy.

Genitive of Quality (Measure), 79.

60. **Chaps. 18, 19.** 1. To bring up the rear; to be different from; close at hand. 2. The river Sambre has been mentioned above. 3. The depth of the river is six feet. 4. The height of the hill is about one hundred feet; more than one hundred paces. 5. Cæsar sent ahead the cavalry. 6. When he had sent ahead the cavalry, he followed on himself (*ipse*). 7. The plan of march is different from what the Belgæ report. 8. Who brought up the rear? 9. The enemy withdrew into the woods. 10. How far (to what limit) did our men pursue them?

Second Periphrastic Conjugation, 128. Dative of Agent, 63.

61. **Chap. 20.** 1. You have everything to do at once (one time). 2. I must give the signal. 3. The lieutenant, a man of great skill, has to draw up the line. 4. Cæsar had to encourage the soldiers. 5. The experience of the soldiers proved (was) a help (*dat.*) in these difficulties. 6. They know^s what ought^s to be done. 7. They prescribed for themselves what ought (*tense?*) to be done. 8. The lieutenants did not leave^s their respective legions. 9. Of myself I shall execute what seems best.

Gerund and Gerundive (Gen. and Acc.), 90, 92.

62. **Chaps. 21, 22.** 1. Different legions in different places. 2. He gave the necessary orders (ordered neces-

sary things). 3. For the purpose of encouraging the tenth legion he did this. 4. It is the time for (of) putting on the ornaments. 5. They are ready for fighting. 6. He is ready to fight. 7. They lost the chance to fight (time of fighting). 8. The signal for joining battle must be given by Cæsar. 9. Some were in one place, others in another. 10. One was in one place, another in another (46).

Genitive: Possessive, 82; Partitive, 81.

63. Chap. 23. 1. The chief command; to put to flight. 2. The soldiers of the tenth legion discharged their javelins. 3. The Atrebates were breathless with running. 4. They proceeded to the river for the sake of crossing. 5. From what place did they drive them? 6. With what did they slay^s them? 7. They were slain by the swords of the soldiers. 8. A large part of them were slain (*sing.*). 9. With whom have they come in conflict? 10. The left side (part) of the camp was exposed.

Ablative of Means or Instrument, 11. Imperfect of Continued Action, 99.

64. Chap. 24. 1. To withdraw, — retreat; to take to flight. 2. In another direction; in all directions. 3. The light-armed infantry were with the cavalry. 4. These were routed at the first onset of the enemy. 5. The enemy met the horsemen face to face (opposite, *adj.*). 6. The camp-followers went forth to plunder. 7. They rushed (were borne) some in one direction, some in another. 8. The camp was filling up (*pass.*) with a multitude of the Gauls. 9. The slingers were fleeing in all directions. 10. The legions were hard pressed by the cavalry.

Dative of Separation, 70.

65. Chap. 25. 1. The position is critical (the thing is in a strait); to do one's best; to charge. 2. The soldiers, being crowded together, were a hindrance (*dat.*) to one another (themselves). 3. Sextius was worn out by many (and) severe wounds. 4. The position was critical, and no (nor any) reserve^s could be sent up. 5. Cæsar snatched a shield from a soldier. 6. From whom did he snatch a shield? 7. Will he snatch a javelin from Sextius? 8. The soldiers charged.

Dative of Purpose, 68. Ablative with *potior*, 24.

66. Chap. 26. 1. To leave nothing undone. 2. He left nothing undone. 3. They faced about and charged (bore reversed standards) upon the enemy. 4. Two legions acted as (were for) a guard^s to the rear. 5. He sent the tenth legion as a reinforcement to his men. 6. They do not fear being (lest they be) surrounded. 7. They will make a bolder resistance (resist more boldly). 8. Labienus got possession of the enemy's camp. 9. Did he get possession of the baggage? 10. How (in what place) do matters stand? 11. He learned how matters stood.

Dative with Compounds, 64.

67. Chap. 27. 1. The men were leaning upon their shields. 2. Even [though] unarmed, they encountered armed [men]. 3. The cavalry wiped out the disgrace of flight by valor. 4. They put themselves before the legionary soldiers. 5. You put yourself ahead of me. 6. The first of them fell. 7. The others stood upon them as they lay (*part.*). 8. They picked up the javelins and threw them back (threw back the intercepted javelins). 9. They got possession of (*potior*) the river bank. 10. The river was a protection to them.

Cum-causal, 50.

68. Chap. 28. 1. The race of the Nervii was reduced almost^a to extinction. 2. Since the warriors (soldiers) had been conquered, the elders surrendered. 3. There is no safety (nothing safe^s) to the vanquished. 4. All that survived surrendered to Cæsar. 5. All that survive will surrender. 6. There are barely five hundred that can bear arms. 7. Since they were suppliants, Cæsar had mercy on them. 8. Since they have surrendered, I will spare them.

Order of Words, 122. Emphasis, 74.

69. Chap. 29. 1. I have written above about the *Aduatuci*. 2. They were coming to help (for help to) the *Nervii*. 3. While they were coming, the battle was announced. 4. When the battle was (had been) announced, they returned home. 5. On all sides around were high cliffs. 6. Pointed logs were placed on the walls. 7. That [part of the] baggage train which they could not drive they carried. 8. *Now* they make (*īnferō*) war, *now* they make (*faciō*) peace. 9. Since their neighbors harassed them, they defended themselves. 10. With the consent of *all*, this place was selected.

Agreement of Verb with Subject, 44. Agreement of Adjective with Noun, 37.

70. Chap. 30. 1. Frequent raids were made. 2. Slight skirmishes were fought (*change the form of sentence*). 3. A tower was set up a long distance off. 4. Why did they laugh at the tower (*acc.*)? 5. By what strength^s, pray, do you expect to set it up on the wall? 6. You cannot, since it is so heavy (of so great weight). 7. You are men of so small stature. 8. In comparison with the

height (*altitūdō*) of the tower, you are very short (*brevis*). 9. The tower was an object of ridicule to them. 10. Generally the Gauls are men of great stature.

Dative with Adjectives, 62.

71. Chap. 31. 1. The tower moved (*pass.*) and approached the walls. 2. It is moving and approaching the walls. 3. The Romans wage war by divine aid. 4. We give ourselves up to your power. 5. One [thing] we beg and beseech. 6. The Aduatuci must^s be spared. 7. Our neighbors envy us. 8. They are hostile to us. 9. Our enemies are our neighbors (neighboring to us). 10. The Romans were hostile to the Aduatuci.

Ablative "in accordance with," 3.

72. Chap. 32. 1. It is more in accordance with my custom than with your desert. 2. It is in accordance with Cæsar's custom to spare the vanquished (*vincō*). 3. The Aduatuci according to their custom concealed a third part of the arms. 4. If you surrender, I will spare you. 5. I shall do what (that which) I did in the case of the Nervii. 6. On that day there was peace. 7. The Nervii have been unfriendly (*inimicus*) to the Romans.

Ablative of Time, 22.

73. Chap. 33. 1. By night; towards evening. 2. In the third watch; on the next day. 3. The gates were shut. 4. The soldiers went out of the town by night. 5. Why did Cæsar order the gates to be shut? 6. They had formed this plan before. 7. They made shields out of bark. 8. The enemy fight (*impers.*) as fiercely as brave men ought to fight. 9. They fought as fiercely as brave men ought (*perf.*) to have fought (*pres.*). 10. There was

a rush to that place. 11. How many (**quot**) men were slain on that day? 12. In accordance with this design the gates were broken down.

Future Infinitive after Verbs of Promising, 114.

74. Chap. 35. 1. For fifteen days; in the beginning of summer; before that time. 2. All Gaul was subdued. 3. The nations that lived (*ind.*) beyond the Rhine sent ambassadors. 4. These (which) embassies returned to him the next summer. 5. They promised to give hostages. 6. Cæsar promised to hasten into Italy. 7. He promised to lead the legions into winter quarters. 8. In consequence of Cæsar's despatches the senate decreed a thanksgiving.



BOOK III.

Syntax of Relative Pronouns, 138. Complementary Infinitive, 109.

75. Chaps. 1, 2. 1. What reason had (was to) Cæsar for setting out for Italy? 2. He wished to open a road over the Alps. 3. He determined to winter in those places. 4. The village in which they wintered was called Octodurus. 5. The valley in which this village was situated was not large. 6. There was a river which divided this village into two parts.

7. To form a plan; an additional fact was,—moreover,—and besides. 8. The mountains which overhang are held by the Seduni. 9. The Gauls, to whom he had assigned one part of the village, all departed by night. 10. It happened^s that (**ut**) they suddenly^s renewed the war. 11. The two cohorts, and those not quite full, the

Gauls despised. 12. But they could not withstand even our first assault.

Result Clauses with **ut**, 155. Sequence of Tenses, 160.

76. Chaps. 3, 4. 1. Provision has been made; a majority decides; so much danger. 2. The work on (of) the winter quarters was not completely finished. 3. Sufficient provision for supplies has not been made. 4. It is impossible that aid should come (it cannot be come for aid). 5. Opinions^s were given (said) of this kind, that they should abandon^s the baggage. 6. There was so much danger that they despaired of safety. 7. A majority decided to abandon the baggage.

8. There is hardly time for giving (91) a signal. 9. Our men at first sent no (**nūllus**) weapon without effect. 10. The enemy are wearied with long fighting (length of battle). 11. They are so^s few (**paucī**) that they cannot withdraw from the fight. 12. They cannot withdraw even [when they are] tired. 13. They cannot leave the spot even when they are wounded.

Imperative, 96. Hortatory Subjunctive, 165.

77. Chaps. 5, 6. 1. The battle with the Nervii; to the last extremity; the last resource. 2. Not only did the enemy press them more vigorously, but they even began to fill up the trenches. 3. In the battle with the Nervii Sextius was exhausted with wounds. 4. The only hope of safety lies (is) in making (if we shall make) a sortie. 5. Stop the fight, and only pick up the spent weapons. 6. Let them stop the fight. 7. Refresh yourselves from toil. 8. Let them refresh themselves from toil.

9. To entertain the hope; one-third. 10. You leave us no opportunity either (no . . . either = neither) of

learning what is doing, or of collecting our wits. 11. Do you entertain the hope of slaying all your enemies? 12. Surround the camp on all sides. 13. Let them surround the camp. 14. Out of more than three thousand men one-third were slain.

Ablative of Specification, 21. First Periphrastic Conjugation, 127.

78. Chaps. 8, 9. 1. The sea-coast. 2. The influence of the Veneti is very great, because they hold all the sea-coast. 3. They surpassed all in knowledge of naval affairs. 4. All who use ships are their tributaries. 5. We had rather (prefer to) recover our hostages than remain in slavery to (of) the Romans. 6. Send back our hostages to us. 7. Let them send back the hostages.

8. As soon as; far otherwise than, — very different from. 9. Meanwhile galleys were constructed, rowers organized, and (60) sailors and pilots collected. 10. The Veneti are stronger in ships, the Romans in men. 11. We are about to build as many ships as possible. 12. Everything turned out contrary to expectation. 13. Where are they going to wage war? 14. We do not know where they are going to wage war (146).

Priusquam with Indicative and Subjunctive, 171.

79. Chaps. 10, 11. 1. To be eager for revolution; we may do the same thing (the same is permitted to us). 2. The difficulties of waging war were very great (*superl.*). 3. If we overlook this revolt, the Morini will think they may do the same thing. 4. The Remi were on the point of exciting the rest of the Gauls to war. 5. Before more states had conspired, he divided the army. 6. Before more states should conspire, the army was distributed

more widely. 7. Cæsar thought that, before more states should conspire, he ought to divide his army.

8. He ordered (*mandō*) Labienus to hold the Remi to (in) their allegiance. 9. Before the Aquitani sent auxiliaries, Crassus set out for that region. 10. Crassus, slow (*tardus*) by nature, set out for Aquitania before auxiliaries should be sent. 11. Sabinus took care that the Unelli and Lexovii should be kept apart.

Purpose Clause with *quō*, 140. Dative with Special Verbs, 71.

80. Chaps. 12, 13. 1. There is access to the town neither by land (feet) nor by ships. 2. Cæsar shut off the sea by dikes and dams. 3. That they might remove their goods the more easily, they had an abundance of ships. 4. They carried off their goods before the tide ebbed. 5. Cæsar was detained by storms a great part (29) of the summer.

6. The ships are made flat-bottomed, that they may the more easily encounter the shoals. 7. They are made wholly (*adj.*) of oak, that they may the more easily endure the buffeting of the waves. 8. They used timbers a foot (*adj.*) thick, and hides for sails. 9. There was so great strength in the Gallic ships that ours could not harm them. 10. Neither could storms injure them easily. 11. Rocks and reefs injure our ships. 12. Our ships could neither bear a storm easily nor stay in shoal water safely.

Dative with Compounds, 64. Passive of Verbs that take the Dative, 101.

81. Chaps. 14, 15. 1. We can neither check the enemy's flight nor injure them. 2. They cannot be injured. 3. He is injured. 4. Brutus commanded the fleet. 5. Cæsar

was at the head of the army. 6. It is not quite clear to me what I am to do. 7. Their ships cannot be injured with our beaks. 8. The sterns were high so that weapons might fall the more heavily. 9. Our men were superior in valor.

10. To board a ship; sunset; ten o'clock. 11. Three and even four ships at a time surrounded single ones of the enemy. 12. When our men had boarded the enemy's ships, the latter sought safety in flight. 13. Since they found no relief for this (thing), they turned their ships about. 14. The battle raged (it was fought) from about nine o'clock till three.

Ablative of Accompaniment, 2.

82. Chaps. 16, 17. 1. To sell into slavery; for the future. 2. They have no place to retreat to (have not whither they may betake themselves). 3. They have no means of defending their towns. 4. They must be punished^s severely, that they may observe the rights of ambassadors more carefully.

5. The chief command; a chance to fight; impression of cowardice. 6. Cæsar with all his troops arrives among the Unelli. 7. Viridovix commanded those forces which he had collected. 8. They proceed to camp with the rest of the leaders. 9. Hope of plunder had called out a large number of robbers. 10. In the absence of Cæsar, Sabinus was unwilling to fight. 11. A lieutenant ought not to fight unless some favorable chance is offered.

Adjective with Adverbial force, 40.

83. Chaps. 18, 19. 1. As a deserter; it happened, — the result was that. 2. Sabinus persuaded a certain shrewd

man to go over to the enemy. 3. This man, a Gaul, told them that Sabinus on the next night would lead his army out of camp. 4. The opportunity of leading the army out of camp ought (*oportet*) not to be thrown away. 5. Men generally are glad to (gladly) believe what (that which) they wish. 6. Joyfully they hastened to camp with their arms.

7. They hastened with great speed. 8. They did not wish the Romans to rally (collect themselves). 9. They arrived at camp all out of breath. 10. Sabinus gave his men the signal which they desired (to his men desiring). 11. It happened that Sabinus with a large number of soldiers made a sortie from two gates. 12. On account of the valor of the soldiers not even one of the enemy escaped. 13. The Gauls eagerly (*adj.*) undertake wars.

Genitive with Adjectives, 76. Ablative with *frētus*, 9.

84. Chaps. 20, 21. 1. At about^s the same time Publius Crassus was waging war in those places where the army of Valerius had been defeated^s. 2. Mallius fled from the same place after losing his baggage-train. 3. When he had arrived there (whither when, etc.) he used no ordinary diligence. 4. He learned that it was the place where Valerius had been killed a few years before.

5. Since the safety of all Aquitania lies (is placed) in our valor, let us not turn (165) our backs. 6. Relying upon our valor, let us besiege the town. 7. Cæsar, relying upon former victories, besieged the town. 8. He is very well skilled (*superl.*) in this thing. 9. Sometimes they made sorties, and sometimes they worked mines up to the walls. 10. The Aquitani are skilled in this [sort of] thing.

Conditional Sentences, Second form, 54. Participle denoting Concession, 123.

85. Chaps. 22, 23. 1. To commit suicide. 2. These devoted followers are called^s *soldurii*. 3. If anything^s should happen to him to whose friendship a *soldurius* has devoted himself, the latter would not refuse to die. 4. Although a sortie was made (*abl. abs.*) still they were driven back into the town. 5. Although they were driven back, nevertheless they enjoyed the same terms of surrender. 6. If a sortie should be made, they would be driven back. 7. A sufficient guard; to have the same feeling. 8. The town was taken within a few days after (in which) they arrived (*impers.*) there. 9. The barbarians, although alarmed at the approach of Crassus, nevertheless, attempted^s to carry on the war. 10. If they should summon^s auxiliaries from Spain, the number of the enemy would increase. 11. Since the number of the enemy was increasing (*pass.*) day by day^s, Crassus prepared to contend in battle. 12. Since the whole council^s had the same feeling, he set the next day for battle.

Negative Purpose, 139.

86. Chaps. 24–26. 1. To withdraw, retreat; at day-break; late at night; what plan. 2. It is safer to form a double line (*abl. abs.*) and put the auxiliaries in the centre of the line. 3. Let us wait [to see] what plan the enemy adopts. 4. The enemy thought that, if the roads should be blockaded (*abl. abs.*) they could win a victory. 5. We must no longer delay going (but that it be gone) to the enemy's camp.

6. While (*cum*) some were supplying stones for the fighters, others^s were bringing sods for the mound^s.

7. The enemy fought steadily that their weapons might not fall without effect (in vain*). 8. Our horsemen were led around that they might not be seen by the enemy. 9. They are led around lest they be seen. 10. If they should be seen, the enemy would find out what is going on. 11. They demolished the walls before the enemy could find out what was going on.

Participle denoting Time, **123**. Ablative Absolute, **1**.

87. Chaps. 27–29. 1. In a very different way from; for a rampart. 2. The Morini carried on war in a very different manner from Cæsar. 3. They conveyed all their property into the forests. 4. Summer having passed, winter will be at hand. 5. Our men, taking their arms, drove the enemy back. 6. Having made an attack upon our men, the enemy were driven back into the woods. 7. Cæsar cut down the woods that no (lest any) attack might be made upon unarmed soldiers.



BOOK IV.

Accusative of Duration, **29**. Locative *domi*, **116**.

88. Chaps. 1–3. 1. From childhood. 2. We shall stay at home two years. 3. They stay a year in one place. 4. For several years the Suevi had harassed them. 5. There are one hundred cantons, from each (*use singuli*) of which a thousand men are led out to war every year. 6. The latter (*hic*) stay at home, [while] the former (*ille*) are under (*in*) arms. 7. The boys are not trained to any duty. 8. They do nothing against their will. 9. On

account^s of daily exercise they become men of extraordinary (greatest) power^s. 10. The Gauls take particular delight in horses. 11. But the Germans use small and ill-shaped [ones]. 12. Nor do they think that anything^s is more disgraceful than to use saddle-cloths. 13. However few [they are], they dare to attack any^s number whatever of effeminate Gauls. 14. Although (*cum*) the Ubii are of the same race, nevertheless they are more refined than the other^s Germans.

Accusative and Genitive with verbs of Feeling or Emotion, **33, 86.**

89. Chaps. 4-6. 1. Finally; on the spot; to form a plan. 2. He wandered for three years. 3. They advanced a three days' journey. 4. The Menapii stationed garrisons on this side of the Rhine. 5. Having tried every resource (all things) they pretended to return to their own abodes. 6. Before (*priusquam*) crossing the river they seized all the vessels of the Menapii. 7. They crossed the Rhine before the Menapii, who were on this side of the river, could be informed. 8. No confidence should be placed in (nothing should be intrusted to) the Gauls. 9. Travellers are compelled, even against their will, to disclose^s what they have heard. 10. What regions have you come from? 11. They repent of their schemes. 12. He formed a plan that he repented of on the spot. 13. They often have to (*necesse*) repent of schemes which they enter into. 14. The things that I suspected would happen have happened.

Dative of Possessor, **67.** Relative of Characteristic, **149.**

90. Chaps. 7-9. 1. The next day but one; several days before. 2. We do not refuse to contend (*subj. w. quā*),

if we are provoked. 3. Nor are we the first^s (*adj.*) to make war upon others. 4. We resist anybody that (those (*dat.*) whoever) makes war on us, and ask for no quarter (nor ask, etc.). 5. Let not (*nē*) the Romans allow (*pres. subj.*) us to be driven from (*ex*) the lands that we possess. 6. We yield to the immortal gods alone, to whom not even the Suevi are equal. 7. I could have no friendship with you, if you should remain in Gaul (54). 8. The Germans did not repent of their plea. 9. We are the only ones who are equal to the immortal gods. 10. There is no one whom we cannot conquer. 11. The Ubii have lands in Gaul. 12. I have friends at home. 13. Germans had settled in the territories of the Ubii several years before. 14. The ambassadors returned to Cæsar the next day but one.

Cum-concessive, 61. Ablative of Source or Origin, 20.

91. Chaps. 10–12. 1. To tend in the same direction, have the same purpose; to give security on oath. 2. There are [some] of these nations that subsist on fish and birds' eggs. 3. We earnestly entreat^s you not to advance (lest you advance) further. 4. We beg^s you to send forward [some] horsemen. 5. If the Ubii will give us security on oath, we will accept the terms (use the condition) that you propose. 6. Here (hither) they assembled the next day in great numbers. 7. Tell the prefects not to irritate the enemy. 8. Although the number of our cavalry was more^s than five thousand (*gen.*), the enemy made an attack upon them. 9. Although they had sought for a truce, they killed seventy-four of our men. 10. Although our men feared nothing, they were quickly thrown into disorder. 11. Piso was born of noble stock.

Dum (until), 173. Double Questions, 145.

92. Chaps. 13, 14. 1. Elders; it is the height of folly. 2. Whether . . . or . . . or; contrary to what had been said; no time (room). 3. It was the height of folly to wait until the enemy had formed their plans. 4. It is very foolish to wait until the cavalry return. 5. The next day in the morning the chiefs came to Cæsar to clear themselves. 6. Cæsar ordered them to be detained until a battle should be [fought]. 7. Although (**cum**) the chiefs came as (**prō**) ambassadors, Cæsar detained them. 8. It is the height of folly to let a single (**ūnus**) day go by. 9. We know not (**nēsciō**) whether it is better to do this or that. 10. Is it (*use -ne*) better to hold a council or to take up arms? 11. He will arrive at the camp before we can tell what is going on (171). 12. The soldiers burst into the camp before we could tell what was going on.

Causal Clauses with **quod**, etc., 49. Dative with Compounds, 64.

93. Chaps. 15, 16. 1. All to a man; opportunity to depart; to have the ability and the courage. 2. Is it better (**præstat**) to cross the Rhine or to remain in camp? 3. They threw away their arms (*abl. abs.*) and rushed out of camp. 4. Overcome with fear they cast themselves into the river. 5. We were all safe to a man, [only] a very few being wounded. 6. They wished to remain with Cæsar because they feared punishment from (of) the Gauls. 7. For many reasons Cæsar determined that the war must be finished. 8. He thought he must cross (*pass.*) the Rhine because the Germans were easily induced to come into Gaul. 9. The Germans feared for their own affairs because the Romans

had the courage to cross the Rhine. 10. The Ubii begged for aid because they were hard-pressed by the Suevi. 11. The rest^s were not in the battle because they had crossed the river. 12. We earnestly beg you to send us aid^s.

Purpose Clauses with **ut** and **nō**, 139.

94. Chaps. 17, 18. 1. Consistent with (one's) dignity. 2. The (more) . . . the (more); in ten days after . . . ; from the time when. . . . 3. To cross the Rhine in boats is not consistent with Cæsar's dignity. 4. Therefore a bridge must be built. 5. The bridge was built that the army might be led over. 6. Logs were driven in not vertically, but sloping. 7. The greater the violence of the water, the more tightly are these logs held together. 8. Piles were driven to break the force of the stream. 9. And also (**atque**) that trunks of trees sent by the barbarians might not injure the bridge. 10. The bridge was finished in ten days after it was begun (to be built). 11. Cæsar left a guard at the bridge that the barbarians might not break it down. 12. The Sugambri carried off all their possessions into the woods, because the bridge was built.

Indirect Discourse, 106. Tenses of the Infinitive, 113.

95. Chaps. 19, 20. 1. After (**posteaquam**) the Suevi had learned that Cæsar was building a bridge, they held a council. 2. Remove from your towns and put all your possessions in the woods. 3. Cæsar found out that the Suevi had put their wives and children in the woods, 4. and that all who could bear (*subj.*) arms were assembling. 5. After (**posteaquam**) Cæsar had punished^s the Sugambri, he withdrew into Gaul. 6. He spent eighteen

days in all on the other side of the Rhine. 7. In almost all the Gallic wars auxiliaries have been furnished to our enemies from Britain. 8. It will be of great advantage, if only we ascertain (*fut. perf. ind.*) what nations inhabit Britain. 9. Cæsar thought that he might learn from traders what harbors there were suitable for warships. 10. He summoned traders to him to find out how large the island was.

Relative of Purpose and Cause, 143, 51. Genitive of Value, 83.

96. Chaps. 21, 22. 1. As soon as possible; to attach one's self to Cæsar. 2. Transports; galleys; whatever (of) ships; to make liberal promises. 3. Ambassadors came to say that they would give hostages. 4. The influence of Commius among the Atrebates was regarded [as] of great value. 5. I regard his influence as of small (**parvus**) value. 6. Of how much (**quantus**) value do you regard his influence? 7. Visit what states you can, and tell them I am coming soon. 8. I will examine all the places, as far as opportunity is offered me, seeing that I dare (who dare) not go ashore (out of the ship). 9. The Morini came to excuse themselves on the ground that (because) they were barbarians. 10. We come to promise to do whatever you (shall) order. 11. What galleys we have besides we shall leave on the coast of Gaul.

Passives used Impersonally, 101. Dative of Agent, 63.

97. Chaps. 23, 24. 1. To go on board a ship, — embark; to go ashore, — disembark. 2. Military science; seamanship; promptly. 3. Having gone on board (*use a cum-clause*), they waited at anchor till (**dum**) the weather should be suitable for sailing. 4. It is by no means a

suitable place for disembarking, where weapons can be thrown from the cliffs (higher places) to the shore. 5. Both military science and especially^s seamanship demand that all commands be executed promptly. 6. The Romans could not station their ships except in deep [water]. 7. They had to jump down from the ships with their hands encumbered. 8. The Britons had to advance a little into the water. 9. Our men had to keep their footing amid (in) the waves, weighed down with the weight of their arms. 10. The enemy, on the other hand (*autem*) with their limbs free, could hurl weapons from dry [ground].

Imperfect of Customary or Repeated Action, **98**. Ablative of Means or Instrument, **11**.

98. Chaps. 25, 26. 1. To retreat, — fall back ; to do one's duty ; to reach, ("make") the island. 2. The galleys were removed a little from the transports and put in motion with oars. 3. The enemy were dislodged by slings, arrows, [and] (60) heavy missiles hurled from the galleys. 4. If you do not wish to be frightened by the heavy missiles, fall back just a little. 5. He at least who carried the eagle did his duty to the state. 6. If you do not jump down out of the ships, you will betray the eagle to the enemy. 7. We could not follow our own standards, but we flocked to any (whatever) that we came across. 8. The enemy would surround some as they came (coming) out of the ships in scattered groups. 9. When Caesar observed this (which), he sent up [some] skiffs filled with soldiers, as a relief^s to those in distress. 10. Our men put the enemy to flight, but did not follow them up, because they had no cavalry.

Substantive Clause of Result, 157. Ablative of Separation, 19.

99. Chaps. 27-30. 1. As soon as; in the character of an ambassador. 2. Three days after; to confer together; to renew the war. 3. The barbarians arrested Commius as soon as he had left (gone out of) his ship, and put him in chains, although (*cum*) he had come to them in the character of an ambassador. 4. If you lay all the blame on the multitude, you cannot be pardoned (*impers.*). 5. The storm is so great that the ships cannot keep their course. 6. Some of the vessels were driven back to the same place they had started from (whence they had started), and some cast anchor. 7. It happens that the full moon causes very high tides. 8. It happened that Cæsar did not know (*nēsciō*) that the full moon causes very high tides. 9. So great was the panic in (of) our army that the Britons renewed the war. 10. It is evident that the ships are useless for sailing when their rigging is lost. 11. Let us keep^s (*hort. subj.*, 165) them from supplies. 12. They kept our men from [getting] grain. 13. They prevented^s their return (them from return). 14. The best thing to do (170) is to keep them from supplies and prevent their return.

Ablative with *ūtor*, 24. Ablative of Place Where and Whence, 14, 15.

100. Chaps. 31-34. 1. Some new plan; a little too far; by night. 2. In that direction; in all directions. 3. Greater than usual; for several days in succession. 4. It was necessary to use the timber of the disabled ships for repairing the others. 5. We see a larger cloud of dust than usual in that direction (*abl.*) in which (*acc.*) the legion marched. 6. When these cohorts had set out in that direction, the other cohorts immediately

followed them. 7. While (**dum**) our men were engaged in reaping, the enemy, who were skulking in the woods, suddenly attacked them. 8. At first^s they ride around in all directions and then (**deinde**) work their way in among the horsemen. 9. Then they leap down from their chariots, and the drivers withdraw from the battle. 10. They can, even on a steep downward slope, rein in their horses [when] at full gallop (spurred on). 11. The enemy had halted in that place. 12. For several days in succession the enemy were prevented by a storm from [offering] battle. 13. There is a great opportunity to free our country forever, if we drive the Romans out of the island.

Concessive clauses with **etsi**, 52.

101. Chaps. 35–38. 1. To set sail; to give battle; to renew the war. 2. Although the enemy can escape danger by their rapidity, nevertheless our men will give battle. 3. The thirty horsemen of whom mention has been made before, pursued the enemy, and killed several of them. 4. The voyage ought not to be exposed to the equinoctial storm. 5. Although they set sail at midnight, they nevertheless reached port in safety (*adj.*). 6. If you do not wish (are unwilling) to be killed, lay down your arms. 7. Although they did not wish to be killed, they did not lay down their arms. 8. About six thousand men assembled for the defence of (**ut**, etc.) three hundred. 9. After our cavalry came in sight, the enemy threw down their arms and fled. 10. We have no place to retreat to (whither we may retreat). 11. The year before the Morini had used the swamps as a place of refuge.

FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION.

BOOK I.

NOTE. — A superior figure (e.g. Those¹) put after a word applies to that word alone; put before a word, applies to two or more immediately following. A superior s (e.g. surpass^s) is a reference to the Table of Synonyms, p. 193. In the notes literal translations and idioms are printed in *Italics*; the numbers refer to the Grammatical Index, p. 205, unless otherwise specified. Cf. = compare; w. = with; other abbreviations will be readily understood.

102. Chaps. 1-5. 1. The Belgæ, who inhabit one of the three parts of Gaul, are the bravest of all the Gauls, because they do not import those things which enfeeble the character.

2. Those¹ who surpass^s all their neighbors "in courage hold the supremacy of all Gaul. Whence³ it happens⁴ that they are incessantly waging war with the Germans.

3. ⁵Having bought up a large number of wagons, and having completed all other preparations,⁶ they selected Orgetorix ⁷to undertake an embassy to the states.

4. At that time Casticus, a Sequanian, who had seized the throne in his own state, ⁸and also Dumnorix, an Æduan, to whom Orgetorix had given his daughter in⁹ marriage, influenced¹⁰ by the argument of Orgetorix, ¹¹exchanged pledges with each other.

102. ¹ Use a form of **is**. — ² Abl. of specification, 21. — ³ *From which things*, abl. of cause, 5. — ⁴ Substantive clause of result, 157. — ⁵ Use two abl. abs. clauses, or **cum**-clauses. — ⁶ *Things*. — ⁷ Cf. **ad eās rēs cōnficiendās**. — ⁸ **Atque**. — ⁹ *Into*. — ¹⁰ Part. agreeing w. two nouns, 37. — ¹¹ Cf. **inter sē fidem dant**.

103. Chaps. 6–10. 1. One route is difficult, because a high mountain overhangs; the other is easy, because it is near the Rhone, over¹ which is a bridge.

2. ²All preparations are made, and a day appointed³, ³on which they are to cross the Rhone by the bridge ⁴that extends from Geneva, because this route⁵ is the easier.

3. When Cæsar was informed of their approach, he hastened ⁵from Rome ⁶in order to intercept⁷ them. To the ambassadors, ⁸who had been sent to him, he replied that he ⁹did not think the Helvetians ¹⁰would march through the province without [doing] injury.

4. Nevertheless, he named⁸ a day ¹¹for the ambassadors to come again, and, meanwhile, ¹²having extended a wall and a ditch from the lake to the mountain, and having posted garrisons ¹³here and there, and fortified redoubts, ¹⁴he informed the ambassadors, when they had come back, that he should prevent them ¹⁵if they attempted⁸ to march ¹⁶by that route.

5. ¹⁷In order that they might more easily march through the country of the Sequanians, they gave hostages to them ¹⁸to pass through their territories without injury.

103. ¹In. — ²Two verbs connected by “and” are often best rendered by part. and verb without “and.” Here put the first clause in the abl. abs. — ³Rel. clause of purpose, 143. — ⁴*Extending.* — ⁵Abl. without prep., 15. — ⁶Purpose clause w. *ut*, 139. — ⁷*Intercipiō.* — ⁸*Having been sent.* — ⁹Pres. inf. — ¹⁰Fut. inf. — ¹¹*On which day, etc.*; see n. 3. — ¹²See Ex. 102, n. 5. — ¹³Expressed by prefix of verb. — ¹⁴*When the ambassadors had come back, he showed, etc.* — ¹⁵When a cond. sent. occurs in ind. disc., always consider what the direct form would be; here, *if you shall have attempted . . . I shall prevent.* Then follow the rules for change of mood and sequence of tenses, 56. — ¹⁶See 23. — ¹⁷*Quōd*, because of the comp., 140. — ¹⁸Purpose clause w. *ut*.

104. **Chaps. 11–15.** 1. Cæsar, since he could not defend himself from the Æduans, sent an ambassador to them ¹to say that² he had always ³served their interests so well that² they ought⁴ not to attack⁵ his army.

2. ⁴When Cæsar was asked⁵ ⁵in what direction the Arar flowed, he said, “⁶You cannot tell by the eye, because it flows with such⁷ extraordinary slowness.”

3. ⁸That part of the army⁸ which had hidden in the forests, ⁹after the battle was fought, began⁸ to build a bridge over the river in order that they might attack⁸ Cæsar ¹⁰when he did not expect them.

4. Divico said to Cæsar that ¹¹as for his having built a bridge over the Arar in one day, ¹²he should not on that account⁸ despise the courage of the Helvetians, who were alarmed¹³ at his sudden arrival.

5. Cæsar ¹⁴made the following reply: that he remembered the events which the ambassadors had mentioned, and on that account ¹⁵was very indignant; that, even ¹⁶if he had committed any injury, he could not forget that the Æduans had forcibly attempted ¹⁷to march through the province; that, nevertheless, ¹⁸if they should apologize to him for their recent injuries, he would not punish⁸ them.

104. ¹ *Who should say.*—² Note the difference between these two “thats.”—³ *Deserved so well of them.*—⁴ Use this order, *Cæsar, when he was asked.* For “said” use *inquit*, inserted in the direct quotation.—⁵ Ind. question, 146.—⁶ *It cannot be judged.*—⁷ **Tam.**—⁸ *Which part . . . that.* For position of rel. clause, see 153.—⁹ Abl. abs.—¹⁰ Cf. *inopinantēs*.—¹¹ *Because he had built*, subjunc. in ind. disc., 108.—¹² *Let him not despise*; subjunc. for imper. of dir. disc., 108.—¹³ Subjunc. by attraction, 162.—¹⁴ *Replied thus.* Study carefully the rules for ind. disc., 106.—¹⁵ Cf. *gravius ferre*.—¹⁶ A condition contrary to fact (unreal) retains its mood and tense in ind. disc.—¹⁷ Use noun.—¹⁸ See Ex. 103, n. 15.

105. Chaps. 16–20. 1. ¹When Cæsar observed that the Æduans were not collecting the grain which they had promised,² and that there was not a sufficient³ store of provender for his army, he summoned⁴ their leading men, and complained because at so critical a time they had not relieved⁴ him.

2. Liscus had no doubt that the magistrates themselves by violent harangues⁵ prevented the common people⁶ from using⁶ the grain which had been collected⁷.

3. Cæsar⁸ asked many questions of Liscus and others; he found [it] to be true that Dumnorix was⁹ in great favor with the common people; that his wife was a Helvetian, and that his sister¹⁰ had been given in marriage to a Helvetian; [and] that he commanded the cavalry which started¹¹ the flight in an unsuccessful skirmish¹² that happened¹³ a few days before.

4. When all these things had been done¹⁴ without Cæsar's knowledge, he thought there was sufficient reason¹⁵ why he should summon⁸ Divitiacus to him and urge him¹⁶ to take measures concerning Dumnorix.

5. Divitiacus¹⁷ was much pained at this, and begged⁸ Cæsar¹⁸ not to pass too severe a sentence upon his brother. Moved by his entreaties, he summoned Dumnorix, told him¹⁹ what fault he found in him, and advised him²⁰ to avoid all grounds of suspicion in future.

105. ¹ See Ex. 104, n. 4. — ² Subjunc. in ind. disc. — ³ *Large enough*. — ⁴ Subjunc. w. **quod** denoting reason "on another's authority," 49. — ⁵ Sing. — ⁶ Cf. **nē cōnferant**. — ⁷ See Ex. 104, n. 13. — ⁸ *Sought many [things]*. — ⁹ Abl. of quality, 18. — ¹⁰ Cf. **nūptum conlocāsse**. — ¹¹ *Made a beginning of*. — ¹² Use part. — ¹³ See 22. — ¹⁴ Cf. **inscientibus ipsis**. — ¹⁵ Ind. quest., 146. — ¹⁶ **statuō**. — ¹⁷ *Took much pain from*. — ¹⁸ *Lest he should decide anything more severe*. — ¹⁹ *What [things] he blamed*, ind. quest. — ²⁰ Not inf.

106. Chaps. 21–26. 1. On the same day, Cæsar sent Considius with scouts to ascertain ¹what the design of the enemy was. He himself ²formed a line of battle and waited for Considius. ³The latter, ⁴not knowing^s that Labienus held the mountain, reported to Cæsar that it was held by the enemy. Late in the day Cæsar learned that he ⁵was panic-stricken, and had reported ⁶what he had not seen ⁷just as if he had seen it.

2. Cæsar, either^s because he thought he ought^s to distribute grain to the army, or because⁹ he saw that the Helvetians had changed their plans,^s ¹⁰seized a higher position and fortified a camp there.

3. The Helvetians ¹⁰made an attack upon the camp, but were repulsed. Then Cæsar ¹⁰formed a triple line of battle, and waited for a second attack. The Gauls ¹⁰drew their swords and ¹¹advanced up to the hill. Our men from their higher position threw their javelins against the advancing phalanx, and pierced through and pinned together the enemy's shields, ¹²so that they, ¹³not being able to fight with ease ¹⁴with their left arms shackled, threw away their shields, and fought with their bodies unprotected. ¹⁵The fight was kept up till late in the night. But finally the enemy, weary with wounds, withdrew.

106. ¹ *What of design was to the enemy*, ind. quest. — ² *Make the first clause an abl. abs.* — ³ *Hic or ille?* See 132. — ⁴ *Since he did not know.* — ⁵ *Having been terrified by fear had reported.* — ⁶ Dependent clause in ind. disc. 108. — ⁷ Do not try to translate this clause literally; find the proper phrase in the text. — ⁸ *Oportet.* — ⁹ *Eō quod.* — ¹⁰ Use abl. abs. and verb, of course omitting "and" or "but." — ¹¹ Cf. *sub . . . aciem successerunt.* — ¹² *Illi ut*, like *multi ut* in chap. xxv. Is this a purpose or a result clause? — ¹³ *Since they were not.* — ¹⁴ Abl. abs., denoting what? — ¹⁵ *It was fought.*

107. Chaps. 27–31. 1. ¹While the Helvetians were awaiting Cæsar's arrival, they collected all the slaves who had fled for refuge to them.

2. ²When Cæsar found^s out that about five thousand men had left³ the camp and were hastening towards the Rhine, he ordered them to return to the place ⁴they had started from.

3. ⁵"At your request I will grant you permission to rebuild the houses that you have burned,⁶ and^s to receive the Æduans into ⁷the same condition of rights and liberties that you yourself enjoy."

4. The ambassadors left^s their homes^s ⁸with the design of asking^s Cæsar ⁹to appoint a day for a council^s of all the states of Gaul. ¹⁰They themselves wished to treat with him in secret about the safety of their states. There were two parties in¹¹ Gaul that contended for the mastery, ¹²one of which invited the Germans to cross the Rhine.

5. The Gauls, crushed by the battle, were compelled to give hostages. Divitiacus was the only one ¹³who could not be induced to take the oath. Nevertheless, he thought that Ariovistus, a passionate, reckless man,¹⁴ as soon as the Gauls were conquered, ¹⁵would practice every kind of cruelty upon them.

107. ¹ Cf. *dum ea conquiruntur*. Observe the mood and tense, 72.—² Cf. Ex. 104, n. 4.—³ *Gone out from*.—⁴ *Whence they had started*.—⁵ Cf. *petentibus Aeduīs . . . concessit*.—⁶ Subj. by attraction, 162.—⁷ *An equal condition . . . and you yourselves are*.—⁸ *With this design that they might ask*. Put "with this design" at the beginning.—⁹ Not inf.—¹⁰ The next two sentences may be put in the indirect form as depending upon a verb of saying understood.—¹¹ *Of*.—¹² *Of which one*.—¹³ Rel. clause of characteristic after *ūnus*, 149.—¹⁴ Put the noun before the adjs.—¹⁵ Cf. *in eōs . . . ēdere*.

108. Chaps. 32–36. 1. The Sequanians alone remained silent, doing none of the things that the others^a did, not even asking^a Cæsar for aid.^a The reason of this behavior¹ was that they were wholly² in the power^a of Ariovistus, whom they had received into their towns, and ³whose cruelty they dreaded, even when he was absent. Wherefore their lot was a very hard [one].

2. It is disgraceful under such a rule [as that] of the Roman people, that men ⁴who have been called^a brothers⁵ by the senate ⁶should be annoyed by Ariovistus, who, ⁷if he should lead a great number of men into Gaul, ⁸would not refrain from doing ⁹such things as the Cimbri and Teutoni have done.

3. Wherefore¹⁰ Cæsar ¹¹requested^a Ariovistus to come to a conference, and treat with him about ¹²matters of the highest interest to both; but he demurred,¹³ and said that he didn't know what business¹⁴ Cæsar¹⁵ had in Gaul anyhow; that he had conquered^a the Æduans and made ¹⁶them tributaries, and that the ¹⁷name of brothers given by the Roman people ¹⁸would do them no good; that, ¹⁹as to Cæsar's attempting^a to dictate to him how he should exercise²⁰ his rights, he (Cæsar) would not contend with him ²¹except to his own²² ruin^a.

108. ¹ Rēs. — ² Adj. — ³ *Of whom . . . absent the cruelty.* — ⁴ *Having been called.* — ⁵ Pred. acc., 34. — ⁶ Pres. inf., subject "men." — ⁷ Second form of condition, 54. — ⁸ Cf. *sibi . . . temperātūrōs . . . quīn . . . exirent*, and note change of tense. — ⁹ *Those [things] which.* — ¹⁰ *On account of which thing.* — ¹¹ Note the construction w. *postulō*. — ¹² *The highest things of both.* — ¹³ *Gravor*, part. — ¹⁴ Partitive gen., 81. — ¹⁵ Dat. of possessor, 67. — ¹⁶ Two accs., same person or thing, 34. — ¹⁷ *Fraternal name of the Roman people.* — ¹⁸ *Would be far away from them.* — ¹⁹ *Because, etc.* Look out for the pronouns, 135, 137. — ²⁰ *Use.* — ²¹ *Without.* — ²² *Ipsē*.

109. Chaps. 37–40. 1. Greatly alarmed at ¹these proceedings, they think they ²ought to hasten ³for fear that, if the Treviri should attempt⁴ to cross the Rhine and ⁴form a junction with the forces of Ariovistus, ⁵they could not easily be resisted.

2. While the army was encamped near this town, the soldiers were seized with a sudden panic, because [some] traders had said that the Germans were men of remarkable valor. ⁶Some of them were so frightened that they made their wills, and others hid in tents and said they wanted to go home.

3. Cæsar ⁷called a council⁸ of the centurions, and upbraided them severely because they attempted⁸ to dictate to him,⁹ their commander: “¹⁰Why should Ariovistus so rashly ¹¹fail in his duty? When the Cimbri were defeated⁸ by Marius, the soldiers seemed ¹²to have deserved no less praise than the centurions. If you should inquire ¹³why the flight of the Gauls took place, you would find⁸ that they ¹⁴were tired out by the length of the war, and were caught ¹⁵by a stratagem for which there was no chance against our skilled soldiers. I know that the tenth legion, ¹⁶in which I have the greatest confidence, will never despair of their commander, or inquire⁸ in what direction he leads them, but will follow him, even if nobody else does.¹⁷”

109. ¹ Which things; put first. — ² Impers. — ³ Nē. — ⁴ Unite themselves. — ⁵ It could less easily be resisted to them. — ⁶ Of whom some [others]. — ⁷ Abl. abs. — ⁸ Ind. or subj.? 49. — ⁹ Eī or sibi? 137. — ¹⁰ Note that the following is direct discourse, while the passage in chap. xl., upon which it is based, is indirect. — ¹¹ Depart from; pres. subj., deliberative, 164. — ¹² Meritī [esse], agreeing w. militēs, 119. — ¹³ Ind. quest. — ¹⁴ Use part. — ¹⁵ For which stratagem . . . by that, 153. — ¹⁶ Cf. huic legiōni . . . māximē. — ¹⁷ Shall follow.

110. Chaps. 41-44. 1. The soldiers of Cæsar's army were so moved by his harangue that they apologized to him, and assured him that they would carry on the war ¹with the greatest alacrity; their² apology was accepted.

2. As³ Cæsar drew near to Ariovistus, ⁴ambassadors were sent to and fro between them, and finally a day was appointed for a conference. To this⁵ conference ⁶each took ten horsemen, and they themselves parleyed ⁷on horseback.

3. ⁸When they had arrived at the appointed place, Cæsar at the outset mentioned the great favor ⁹shown by the senate to Ariovistus ¹⁰in styling him king, and showed^s that, although¹¹ he had no just grounds for⁹ demanding^s such a favor, the Romans would take away ¹²from him nothing that they had given, if he should return¹³ the hostages ¹⁴and not allow any^s more Germans to cross the Rhine.

4. Ariovistus made a brief reply to Cæsar's demands: [saying] that he ¹⁵had been requested^s by the Gauls themselves to cross the Rhine; that he had imposed tribute upon them by the laws^s of war; that if the Roman people should interfere¹³ with this tribute, he would not seek their friendship a second time; that he knew that Cæsar's death^s would be acceptable to many leaders of the Romans.

110. N.B. — The student cannot give too much attention to the effect of the order of words in a Latin sentence. See 122. In general the order may be imitated from the corresponding passage in the text. — ¹ Abl. of manner, 10. — ² *Whose*. — ³ *Cum*. — ⁴ Abl. abs. — ⁵ *Which*. — ⁶ *They led ten apiece* (distrib.). — ⁷ *From horses*. — ⁸ *When it was come through to*. — ⁹ *Of*. — ¹⁰ Clause w. *quod*. — ¹¹ *Cum*, 61. — ¹² *Dat.*, 70. — ¹³ Plup. subjunc. for fut. perf. ind. of dir. disc. — ¹⁴ *Nor allow any Germans more*. — ¹⁵ *Had crossed . . . being requested*.

111. Chaps. 45-53. 1. Cæsar replied that he could not desert his most meritorious allies, and that Gaul ¹did not belong to Ariovistus ²any more than to the Roman people; that they had not even imposed tribute upon the Arverni, when they had conquered them in war, and that according to the decision of the senate all Gaul ought to be free.

2. Ariovistus displayed³ such insolence, and his horsemen rode up so near to Cæsar, that ⁴the latter broke off the conference. ⁵The former, however, ⁶asked for another conference, but Cæsar saw no reason ⁷for exposing himself again⁸ to such savages; and so he sent as ambassadors two men who ⁸spoke the German language fluently to report what Ariovistus wished to say. ⁹These men were put in confinement by Ariovistus.

3. Cæsar, ¹⁰having observed that the enemy kept themselves in camp, inquired⁸ of [some] prisoners why they did not ¹¹offer him a chance to fight. ¹²He learned that the reason was that they thought they could not conquer before the new moon. He, thinking¹³ it was the will of heaven that his own soldiers should conquer, whether it were new moon ¹⁴or not, gave the signal for battle.

4. The enemy rushed forward so suddenly⁸ that our men threw away their javelins and fought at close quarters with swords. At last the enemy turned their backs, and did not stop fleeing till they reached¹⁵ the river, where they found canoes to ¹⁶cross in.

111. ¹ Was not of, pred. gen. — ² Rather. — ³ Used. — ⁴ Hic. — ⁵ Ille. — ⁶ Requested a conference again. — ⁷ Gen. of gerundive. — ⁸ Used . . . much. — ⁹ Who. — ¹⁰ When (ubi) he had observed, 174. — ¹¹ Make power of fighting to him. — ¹² He found this cause, because. — ¹³ Since he thought. — ¹⁴ Necne. In a direct quest. "or not" would be **annōn**. — ¹⁵ Came through to. — ¹⁶ By which they might cross.

BOOK II.

112. Chaps. 1-5. 1. They are afraid^s that ¹if all Gaul is subdued, the army of the Roman people ²will winter among the Germans.

2. The reasons ³for conspiring were: first^s, ⁴because they were unwilling ⁵that our army should be led among them⁶; secondly, ⁴because they were indignant that royal power was commonly usurped by the more powerful.

3. ⁷As soon as Cæsar learned^s ⁸what was going on, he gave it in charge to Quintus Pedius ⁹to prepare a supply of grain, and in the beginning of summer he sent an ambassador ⁹to inform the Senones ¹⁰that he had moved his camp.

4. Concerning the states that were in arms^s Cæsar ¹¹gained the following information: that the Gauls had been prevented^s from entering within the territories of the Belgæ; that from this fact it resulted ¹²that they did not know ⁸how large^s a multitude had settled there; that each had promised^s twenty thousand picked¹³ men; [and] that the Nervii, who were furthest off, were the most cruel.

112. ¹ Express this clause without *sī*. — ² The Eng. fut. after "fear" is expressed by the Lat. pres. subj., 142. — ³ Not dat. — ⁴ These **quod**-clauses are to be regarded as the reasons not of the writer, but of those who were conspiring; see 49. — ⁵ *Our army to be led*, complementary inf. The Eng. "should" does not necessarily imply the Lat. subjunctive. — ⁶ *Themselves*. — ⁷ *When first*. — ⁸ Ind. quest., 146. — ⁹ Not inf. — ¹⁰ Remember that the conjunction "that" in ind. disc. is not expressed in Lat. — ¹¹ *Found out thus*. The four clauses that follow, each beginning with "that," are in ind. disc., 106. — ¹² A result clause; put the verb in the perf. subj., as often in result clauses after a secondary tense, 161. — ¹³ Note that this part. agrees with "thousand."

113. Chaps. 6–11. 1. Cæsar, ¹having waited a little while near Bibrax, ²a town which, as was indicated by smoke, was less than seven miles off, hastened ³with all his forces towards the town in order to give⁴ relief⁵ to Iccius.

2. When⁶ he had made a trial [to see] what his men could do ⁶in a cavalry skirmish, he found⁸ that they were not inferior to the enemy; and ⁷having pitched his camp on a hill ⁸which rose gradually from the plain, and ⁹having made a trench at each side of the hill, at right angles with it, he formed his line⁸ in front of the camp.

3. In the mean time the enemy attempted⁸ to cross a marsh that was between their camp and ours, ¹⁰with the design of attacking⁸ our men. The latter,¹¹ attempting¹² with the greatest boldness to surround them [while] obstructed in the marsh, pushed forward into a more unfavorable position, and were repulsed by a multitude of weapons.⁸

4. Cæsar, having been informed by spies that the enemy had determined to abandon⁸ their camp, sent an officer ahead ¹³to follow them up. The cavalry ¹having pursued them ¹⁴for several miles, attacked their rear. They, however,¹⁵ stood firm, and valiantly sustained the attack; but ¹⁶those in front, hearing the shouting, fled ¹⁷in confusion.

113. ¹Remember that the perf. part. of a dep. verb has an active sense. — ²*Which town.* — ³Abl. of accompaniment; with or without prep.? 2. — ⁴Ferō. — ⁵Ubi w. perf. ind., 174. — ⁶Abl. of means, not place. — ⁷Abl. abs. — ⁸Use part. — ⁹*A transverse trench having been made, etc.* — ¹⁰*With this design that (ut), 141.* — ¹¹Hi. — ¹²The pres. part. may be used, or — what other construction? — ¹³A rel. clause of purpose, 143. — ¹⁴Acc. of extent, 29. — ¹⁵Autem (postpositive). — ¹⁶*The former.* — ¹⁷*Confused.*

114. Chaps. 12–17. 1. The town [of] Noviodunum, to which they had retreated,¹ was in the territories of the Suessiones. ²In order to storm^s this town Cæsar began^s to throw up a mound^s and set up towers, which movements^s so^s alarmed the Gauls that they sent ambassadors to him.

2. ⁴After the dismissal of the troops, Divitiacus said,⁵ ⁶in behalf of the Bellovaci, that they had been forced to undergo^s ⁷all sorts of insults: and that [those] ⁸who understood^s the designs of the leaders ⁹begged^s of Cæsar to show¹⁰ ¹¹his characteristic kindness not only towards them but also towards all the Belgæ.

3. ¹²Cæsar next¹³ made inquiries about the nature and customs^s of the Nervii, and received the following information: that they were men ¹⁴of great valor, ⁸because they allowed^s no wine to be imported, ¹⁵by which they thought^s their courage was enfeebled.

4. Certain [men] of the Belgæ who were marching along with Cæsar thought that, ⁸because a large quantity¹⁶ of baggage was between the several legions of Cæsar's army, ¹⁷the Nervii would have no trouble ¹⁸in attacking the first legion as it came into camp ¹⁹while still hampered with luggage.

114. ¹Retreat=*sē recipere*.—²Use *ad* w. gerundive.—³*Rēs*.—⁴*Troops having been dismissed*.—⁵*Verba faciō*.—⁶Begin the sentence with this phrase.—⁷*All insults*.—⁸A subordinate clause in ind. disc., 108.—⁹*Petō ā*.—¹⁰*Use*. What kind of a clause is this?—¹¹*His own*; poss. pron.—¹²In this order: *Next Cæsar concerning, . . . when (cum) he inquired, found out thus*.—¹³*Deinde*.—¹⁴Find in the grammar the difference between the abl. and the gen. of quality.—¹⁵Rel. clause of cause or reason, 51. What other reason is there for using the subjunc.?—¹⁶*Numerus*.—¹⁷*Nothing (nihil) of trouble to the N. would be*.—¹⁸*While (cum) the first legion was coming into camp, to attack this*.—¹⁹*Under the packs*.

115. Chaps. 18–23. 1. The Nervii had selected as a place¹ for their camp a hill wooded in² the upper part, within which woods they kept themselves hidden³; and when they saw the first⁴ part of our baggage-train, ⁵which was the time agreed upon ⁶for making an attack upon the cavalry, they suddenly⁸ rushed forth from the woods ⁷in full force.

2. In the ⁸battle⁸ with the Nervii, which ⁹took place between two hills, the Roman soldiers were much embarrassed on account⁸ of the ¹⁰quick movements of the enemy. Many of ¹¹the former were busy¹² ¹³fortifying the camp, and not a few were a ¹⁴considerable distance away seeking materials.¹⁵ Cæsar, however, urged them ¹⁶to remember their former valor and bravely sustain the enemy's charge.

3. The army⁸ could not be formed as the methods of military science¹⁷ required, because the character of the ground was such¹⁸ that the view was obstructed by hedges, and regular¹⁹ reserves could not be posted; nor could Cæsar alone give²⁰ all the [necessary] orders. ²¹After the Atrebates had been driven into the river, our men slew⁸ with their swords a large part of them ²²as they attempted⁸ to cross.

115. ¹ Appositive with "hill." — ² **Ab.** — ³ **In occultō.** — ⁴ See 39. — ⁵ *Which time had been agreed upon.* — ⁶ Gen. of gerund, 90. — ⁷ *With all forces*; abl. of accompaniment without **cum**. When may **cum** be omitted? — ⁸ *Nervian battle.* — ⁹ **Fiō.** — ¹⁰ *Quickness.* — ¹¹ **Ille**; what phrase may take the place of the partitive gen.? — ¹² Use the part. as adj. — ¹³ **In** w. gerundive, 93. — ¹⁴ Superl. of **longē.** — ¹⁵ **Agger.** — ¹⁶ Not inf.; this is a purpose clause. "Remember" = *hold the memory.* — ¹⁷ **Rēs.** — ¹⁸ **Tālis**, followed by result clause w. **ut**, 155. — ¹⁹ **Certus.** — ²⁰ **Administrō.** — ²¹ There are two or three ways of expressing this clause. — ²² *Attempting.*

116. Chaps. 24–28. 1. The camp-followers who had gone out ¹by the decuman gate ²to plunder, when they heard the shouts of the light-armed infantry, were panic-stricken,³ and rushed ⁴some in one direction, some in another.

2. At the same time Cæsar was informed that the centurions of the fifth cohort had been slain,⁵ the standard-bearer killed,⁵ the standard lost, and almost⁵ all the centurions of the other⁶ cohorts either wounded or slain, and that the ⁶situation was so⁶ critical that ⁷our cause was already despaired of.

3. He at⁸ once proceeded to the ⁸front of the line and encouraged the soldiers, ⁹and they ¹⁰with renewed spirit⁹ delayed a little the onset of the enemy; and when the enemy saw that the cavalry were putting themselves before the legionary soldiers,¹¹ and that even ¹²the wounded men were renewing the battle, they displayed the greatest valor even in ¹³utter despair of safety.

4. When many of them had fallen, those who survived piled up the dead bodies of their [comrades], and fought¹⁴ from them as from a mound.⁸ The elders, thinking¹⁴ that Cæsar, who ¹⁵was always merciful to the vanquished, would spare them, surrendered to him; and he bade them occupy¹⁶ their own country and towns.

116. ¹ Abl. of the way by which, **23**. — ² It is well to recall frequently the various ways of expressing purpose; see **139 ff.** Here use **causā** w. gerund. — ³ *Thoroughly frightened*. — ⁴ *Others into another part*, **46**. — ⁵ Put between adj. and noun. — ⁶ Cf. **rem in angustō**. — ⁷ Cf. **dēspērātis nostris rēbus**. — ⁸ *First line*, **39**. — ⁹ *Who*. — ¹⁰ What kind of an abl. is this? — ¹¹ Note the prefix of the verb upon which this word depends. — ¹² *Those exhausted by wounds*. — ¹³ *Extreme hope*. — ¹⁴ Do not use the part. here, but find another way to express “thinking.” — ¹⁵ *Always used mercy*; rel. clause of reason, **51**. — ¹⁶ *Use*.

117. Chaps. 29–35. 1. The Aduatuci, who had come ¹to help^s the Nervii, when they heard of this battle,^s went home again and withdrew into one town, which had high precipices ²all around. Cæsar constructed at a distance from the town a high tower, which the townsmen³ thought^s the Romans, [being] men of so little stature, could not move.

2. But^s when it ⁴began to approach the town, they were so alarmed that they sent ambassadors to Cæsar, who spoke ⁵after this fashion: “⁶they had not thought^s that the Romans could move machines of so great weight; they yielded⁷ to his power^s; one thing they begged,^s—⁸that ⁹he would show his customary kindness, and spare them.” Cæsar replied that he would spare them, ¹⁰if they should surrender before throwing their arms^s into the ditch.

3. The townsmen ¹¹as a last resort suddenly^s made a sortie from the town in the night. Our men quickly ¹²made signals by fires, and all from the nearest redoubts ran ¹³to the spot where the enemy had gone, slew three thousand men, and drove the rest^s into the town.

4. At the same time Crassus informed Cæsar that he had reduced all the states that border on the ocean into the power of the Roman people. After all these achievements, Cæsar hastened to Italy.

117. ¹ Use the dat. of purpose, **68.**—² **Ex omnibus in circuitō partibus.**—³ The Latin word is formed from **oppidum.**—⁴ *Was approaching.*—⁵ **Ad hunc modum.**—⁶ The next three clauses are in ind. disc.—⁷ **Sē permittere.**—⁸ An **ut**-clause in app. w. **ūnum**, 141.—⁹ *Considering (prō) his own kindness he would, etc.*—¹⁰ Consider what this clause would be in the direct form, and cf. **sī prius quam mūrūm ariēs attigisset, sē dedidissent.**—¹¹ Find a phrase in the text.—¹² Abl. abs.—¹³ **Eō quō.**

BOOK III.

118. Chaps. 1-6. 1. ¹When Galba had been sent towards the Alps, he had permission, ²if he thought^s it necessary, ³to go into winter quarters in a valley ⁴which lay near the river. In this⁵ valley there was a village.

2. The Gauls who lived^s there, despising⁶ Galba's legion, ⁷because two cohorts had been detached to procure supplies, and thinking⁶ that the rest^s of the legion could not withstand an attack, departed from the village by night, and ⁸took position on the mountain, ⁹whence they might charge down into the valley and easily overpower^s the whole^s legion. Galba quickly called a council^s ¹⁰for the purpose of getting¹¹ the opinions^s of his officers.

3. ¹²A majority decided to stay where they were and defend the camp. At a given signal the enemy began^s to hurl stones and javelins upon the rampart. Our men at^s first ¹³made a brave resistance, but^s on account^s of their ¹⁴small number were unable to leave^s the fight ¹⁵to rest themselves.

4. At last ¹⁶matters came to such a pass that Galba directed his men to try^s the last resource, ¹⁷make a sortie from all the gates, and leave^s the enemy no chance ¹⁸to collect their wits.

118. ¹ *To Galba, having been sent . . . it was permitted.* — ² Informal ind. disc., 107. — ³ Not inf. — ⁴ *Placed.* — ⁵ What would the Latin probably use instead of the demonstrative? — ⁶ *Because they despised . . . and thought.* — ⁷ Abl. abs. — ⁸ *Cōnsistō.* — ⁹ Rel. clause of purpose, 143. — ¹⁰ Put this purpose clause before the main verb. — ¹¹ *Exquirō.* — ¹² *It pleased the larger part.* — ¹³ *Resisted bravely.* — ¹⁴ Express "small number" by one word. — ¹⁵ *Suī recipiendī causā.* — ¹⁶ Cf. *rēsque . . . cāsum.* — ¹⁷ Abl. abs.; put before "try." — ¹⁸ *Suī conligendī.*

119. Chaps. 7–12. 1. A new war arose in Gaul, ¹the cause of which was that the Veneti, who lived^s on the sea-coast, had detained two Roman ambassadors, thinking² that through them they should recover ³their own hostages, whom Crassus held.⁴ They induced their neighbors to detain two other^s ambassadors, and to do nothing without⁵ the general consent.

2. ⁶Owing to the nature of their position, and to their knowledge of naval affairs, they trusted that the Romans, ⁷who neither had any supply⁸ of ships nor were acquainted^s with the places where the war ⁹would have to be carried on, would give up the hostages and depart from those regions.

3. Although¹⁰ Cæsar was aware^s of the difficulties of waging war in places where towns were situated¹¹ on extreme points of land and afforded¹² no access to an army except by ships, nevertheless, ¹³the wrong done by detaining hostages, the conspiring of so many states, and especially^s ¹⁴the fear that other^s states might conspire against him,—¹⁵all these things urged him to this war. Accordingly he distributed ¹⁶the army among the states which had not yet conspired with the Veneti, and immediately^s ordered ships to be built and supplies to be brought together.

119. ¹*Dē eā causā quod.* — ²*Since they thought.* — ³In this order: *suōs sē obsidēs*, etc. — ⁴Why subjunctive? — ⁵*Unless with* (i.e. *in accordance with*), **3.** — ⁶Abl. of cause, **5.** — ⁷Rel. of cause, **51.** — ⁸*Fa-cultās.* — ⁹*Must be waged*: pass. periph. conj.; subj. by attraction, **162.** — ¹⁰*Cum*, **61.** What word should come first in this sentence? ¹¹Subj. of characteristic, **149**; note that “where” is a relative adverb, and remember that relative clauses are not always introduced by relative pronouns. — ¹²*Had.* — ¹³*Cf. iniūriæ retentōrum equi-tum.* — ¹⁴*Lest other states.* — ¹⁵*Omnia hæc* or *hæc omnia*?

120. **Chaps. 13–17.** 1. The Gallic ships were of so great solidity¹ that ²they could not be injured by the beaks of our ships; and their height was so great that weapons³ could not easily be ³thrown to them with effect. Because of their height, too, the weapons sent by the enemy fell more heavily upon our men.

2. Nevertheless, by means of sharpened hooks attached to long poles, the ropes which fastened the yards to the masts were cut off, and the yards fell; and thus ⁴the sails became useless. Then our men ⁵would board the ship, and by their superior valor overpower⁶ the barbarians. The latter, since they could find⁷ no remedy for this ⁶mode of attack, hastened to flee, but ⁷a calm suddenly⁸ came on so that they could not stir⁸ from the spot.

3. Almost⁹ all the ships were taken⁹ by the Romans; while¹⁰ the Veneti, having lost their ships, ¹¹had no means of defending their towns, and so were compelled to surrender to Cæsar, who decided⁹ that ¹²they must be punished¹³ with the utmost severity.

4. While these things were going on, Viridovix ¹⁴collected a large army of desperate men from all parts of Gaul, and ¹⁵offered battle to Quintus Titurius Sabinus, Cæsar's lieutenant; but he kept himself in camp, ¹⁶because the commander-in-chief was absent.

120. ¹ Firmitūdō; abl. of quality, 18. — ² *It could not be injured to them*; see 101. — ³ Note the force of *ad* in *adiciō*. — ⁴ Cf. *ūsus . . . ēriperētur*. — ⁵ See 98. — ⁶ *Rēs*. — ⁷ *So great a calm, etc.* — ⁸ *Move themselves*. — ⁹ What is the usual position of *ferē* in such phrases? — ¹⁰ Not *cum* or *dum*, but *autem* (postpositive), equivalent to “however,” “on the other hand.” — ¹¹ Cf. *neque . . . habēbant* in chap. xvi. — ¹² Cf. *in quōs vindicandum* in chap. xvi. — ¹³ *Most severely*. — ¹⁴ Abl. abs. — ¹⁵ *Made power of fighting*. — ¹⁶ Cf. *eō absente . . . tenēret* at the end of chap. xvii.

121. Chaps. 18–22. 1. ¹By means of a suitable person, who went over to the enemy's camp as a deserter, Sabinus confirmed the impression² of his cowardice, and ³gave the enemy to understand that he was ⁴going to withdraw his army secretly from camp, and escape ⁵if he could.

2. ⁶When they heard that, they all exclaimed that ⁷they must proceed to Sabinus's camp, ⁸and thither they hastened with such speed that they got there ⁹quite out of breath; and ¹⁰owing to their fatigue, they were ¹¹unable to bear even our first charge.

3. A new war now arose in Aquitania, — which, as has been said, is a third part of Gaul, — whither Crassus had been sent to lead an army against the Sontiates.

4. ¹²A long and fierce battle was fought, because¹³ the Sontiates, relying upon former victories,¹⁴ thought^s that the safety of Aquitania lay¹⁵ in their valor, while¹⁶ the Romans desired^s to show¹⁷ what they could accomplish without their general. Crassus, having slain a large number, attacked^s their town, and many surrendered. While¹⁸ they were delivering their arms, Adiatunnus made a sortie from another part of the town, but was driven back.

121. NOTE. — Always read a sentence through to the end before beginning to translate.

¹ The person through whom is expressed by the acc. with *per*. — ² Begin the sentence with this as the important word, referring to something immediately preceding. — ³ *Made that the enemy believe*, a substantive clause of purpose, 141. — ⁴ Fut. inf. act. — ⁵ Condition in ind. disc., 56. — ⁶ *When which (quod ubi) was heard*. — ⁷ *It ought (oportet) to be gone*. — ⁸ *Whither*. Notice how often the Latin uses relative words, where the English uses demonstratives with conjunctions. — ⁹ One word. — ¹⁰ *Because^s of*. — ¹¹ *Nō primum quidem*, etc. — ¹² Do not translate literally. — ¹³ *Cum*. — ¹⁴ See 9. — ¹⁵ *Was placed*. — ¹⁶ *Autem*. — ¹⁷ [*It*] to be seen. — ¹⁸ *Dum*, foll. by what tense ?

122. Chaps. 23–29. 1. The Aquitanians, thinking^s that they could easily drive the Romans from their boundaries, if all the states should conspire¹ and gather¹ troops, send ambassadors in all directions. Reinforcements are summoned even from Hither Spain. Leaders are selected from the old^s troops of Quintus Sertorius, who understood^s the Roman way² of carrying on war, and the number of the enemy increases^s day by day.

2. When these facts were reported to Crassus, he determined^s to make an attack upon the enemy's camp the next day. At daybreak the soldiers began,^s some to fill the trenches and others to hurl weapons upon the rampart. The enemy fought steadily and fearlessly.³

3. At length some horsemen, ⁴who had made a circuit of the camp, reported to Crassus that ⁵there was an easy way of access to the camp ⁶in the rear. A few cohorts were quickly led around the camp⁷ by a long route, ⁸so that they might not be seen by the enemy, and having broken down the wall, they halted right⁹ in the enemy's camp before these knew ¹⁰what the matter was.

4. Thus, surrounded on all sides, the enemy ¹¹gave up all hope and sought safety in flight. Our cavalry pursued them through the open plains, and returned to camp late at night.

122. ¹ Pres. subj. in the direct form. What tense follows the hist. pres.? See 160. Put the if-clause after "thinking." — ² *Modus*. — ³ *Not timidly*. — ⁴ Abl. abs. — ⁵ *The camp had an easy approach*. — ⁶ *From (ab) the decuman gate*. — ⁷ See 36. — ⁸ Negative purpose, 139. — ⁹ *Ipse* agreeing with "camp." — ¹⁰ *What (of) thing was doing*. — ¹¹ *All things being despaired of*.

BOOK IV.

123. Chap. 1-6. 1. The Suevi are by far the most war-like of all the German tribes. From boyhood¹ they are trained in the practice of arms and in hunting. ²For the most part they live³ on³ milk and flesh, ⁴but not much on grain. Although the climate⁵ is very cold, they bathe⁶ in the streams.

2. They do not import horses from Gaul at a high⁷ price, but use those which are ⁸raised at home. These horses are ⁹trained to ¹⁰stand still in battle, while the horsemen are fighting on foot.

3. The Ubii, who were a little more civilized than the rest⁸ of the Germans, were tributaries of the Suevi; and in the same condition¹¹ were the Usipetes and Tencteri, who, however, were finally driven out ¹²of their lands, and emigrated into regions which the Menapii inhabited.

4. Thus a tribe of Germans came into Gaul, and the Gauls, who were always eager for novelty,¹³ invited them to leave¹⁴ the Rhine, and roam about in those parts of Gaul not far from the sea where¹⁵ the Rhine empties. ¹⁶This was what Cæsar suspected would happen, and he determined to drive the Germans out of Gaul.

123. NOTE.—Remember that a mere word-for-word translation is not what is to be aimed at. Seek to grasp each thought clearly, and express it according to the Latin idiom.

¹Boys.—²Adv. acc., 25.—³That is, *by means of*.—⁴Neque.—⁵Places.—⁶Pass.—⁷Not *altus*.—⁸Born among them.—⁹So trained that.—¹⁰Not literal.—¹¹Causa.—¹²With or without prep.? See 15.—¹³New things. The Latin often uses a concrete expression, where the English uses an abstract noun. Cf. "from boyhood" above.—¹⁴Depart from (ab).—¹⁵Whither.—¹⁶Suspecting that this would be, Cæsar, etc.

124. Chaps. 7-13. 1. The Germans said that they had come ¹on the invitation of the Gauls, but that they would be friendly to Cæsar ²if he would allow^s them to retain the lands ³which they had taken in war; nevertheless, if the Roman people should provoke them, and make war upon them, ⁴they would resist and ask for no quarter.

2. Cæsar replied ⁵that there were no vacant lands in Gaul which so great a multitude could settle in, but that he would order⁶ the Ubii to allow^s them to settle in their territories. Cæsar ⁷kept drawing nearer to the camp of the Germans, and they ⁷kept sending ambassadors to him, ⁸for the purpose, as he thought^s, of causing delay until⁹ their cavalry, which was away, should return.

3. However, before¹⁰ these did return, about eight hundred horsemen, who were near, made an attack upon Cæsar's horsemen, and ¹¹threw them into disorder. ¹²As soon as they rallied, the Germans dismounted, and, stabbing our horses underneath¹³ and throwing down very many of our men, put the rest to flight.

4. After this battle was fought, Cæsar, thinking it to be ¹⁴the height of folly to accept any terms from men¹⁵ who through treachery and deceit, ¹⁶after suing for peace, had made war ¹⁷without provocation, determined^s to give battle on the next day.

124. NOTE.—In arranging the clauses of a complex sentence, the aim should be to put them in the order of their relative importance, just as words are arranged in a clause.

¹ *Being invited by.*—² In dir. disc. *if you should allow.* Put the if-clause first.—³ Direct: *which we have taken.*—⁴ Use **fore ut** w. subj., 75.—⁵ *No lands to be vacant.*—⁶ **Imperō.**—⁷ Imp. ind. of continued action.—⁸ **Causā.**—⁹ **Dum, 173.**—¹⁰ **Priusquam, 171.**—¹¹ **Perturbō.**—¹² *These resisting again^s.*—¹³ **Sub,** prefix of the verb.—¹⁴ *Of the highest folly.*—¹⁵ **Is.**—¹⁶ **Abl. abs.**—¹⁷ **Ultrō.**

125. Chaps. 14–18. 1. The Germans, greatly alarmed at Cæsar's sudden arrival before¹ their camp, were perplexed [as to] whether² they should take their weapons and defend themselves or² flee to the river, but our soldiers burst into their camp³ with such celerity that⁴ they had no chance to deliberate.

2. A few of⁵ them⁶ made a brief resistance, but⁸ when they⁷ heard the shouts of our men, and saw their own men falling⁸ in all directions, they⁷ abandoned⁸ everything, rushed out of the camp, and fled towards the Rhine. There a large number of them were slain,⁸ and many perished in the river,⁹ not being able to get across.

3. Having finished this war, Cæsar determined⁹ ¹⁰that he must cross the Rhine before¹¹ the Usipetes and Tenceteri should unite with the Sugambri. ¹²Another reason was that he wished the Germans to understand⁸ that the Roman army¹³ had both the ability and the courage to cross that river.

4. The Ubii¹⁴ offered to furnish boats¹⁵ for the transportation of the army, but Cæsar thought it¹⁶ inconsistent with the dignity of the Roman people to cross the river in boats, and so he determined to build a bridge; ¹⁷and this bridge was completed in ten days.

125. ¹ *Ad.* — ² *ne . . . an*; double ind. quest., 145, 146. In the direct form the verb would be in the pres. subj. (deliberative), *shall we take our weapons, tēla capiāmus*, etc. — ³ *So quickly.* — ⁴ *No space for (of) holding counsel was given.* — ⁵ *Ex.* The partitive idea is often expressed by *ex* with the abl. rather than by the gen. — ⁶ *Resisted a little while.* — ⁷ Abl. abs. — ⁸ *Passim.* — ⁹ Use a *cum*-clause. — ¹⁰ *That the Rhine must be crossed by him (self)*, pass. periph. conj., 128. — ¹¹ *Prius . . . quam*, 171. — ¹² *Accessit quod.* — ¹³ *Both could and dared.* — ¹⁴ *Promised.* — ¹⁵ *Ad w. gerundive*, 92. — ¹⁶ *Not of the dignity*, 78. — ¹⁷ *Which.*

126. Chaps. 19–23. 1. Cæsar learned¹ from the Ubii that the Suevi intended to await his arrival in a place² which they had selected in³ about the centre of those regions which they held. However, having accomplished everything³ for the sake⁴ of which he had crossed the Rhine, he did not pursue them, but withdrew into Gaul and broke up the bridge.

2. Although⁴ Cæsar knew⁵ nothing about Britain except⁵ that auxiliaries were furnished to his enemies from that island, still he decided⁶ to proceed there⁶ in order to examine into the character of the people, and to reconnoitre the harbors and approaches.

3. But⁷ since he could not learn from traders either what the size of the island was, or what the habits of the people were, or what harbors there were, ⁸before making the attempt⁹ in person, he directed Gaius Volusenus¹⁰ to make a thorough investigation. Meanwhile, when about eighty transports had been collected, he ordered the soldiers to go on board, and immediately⁸ set sail.

4. He reached Britain in about ten hours, and⁸ there saw the forces of the enemy marshalled¹¹ under arms on the cliffs, which in that place are very¹² near the shore. ¹³Not wishing¹⁴ to land there, he proceeded seven miles further,¹⁵ and stationed the fleet¹⁶ off an open and level beach.

126. ¹ Use part. — ² *About middle* (adj.). — ³ *All things*; follow the text in repeating the antecedent in the following rel. clause. — ⁴ *Etsi*. — ⁵ *Nisi*. — ⁶ *Illō*. — ⁷ Not . . . either = *neither*. — ⁸ *Before he should make*. — ⁹ *Iipse*. — ¹⁰ *To explore all things*. — ¹¹ *Armed*. — ¹² *Narrow*. — ¹³ Do not use the part. here, but think of another way to express “not wishing.” — ¹⁴ *Eō ēgredi*. — ¹⁵ *From that place*. — ¹⁶ Abl. of place without prep., 14.

127. Chaps. 24–30. 1. The difficulty of landing¹ was very great, because the enemy were on the beach, and because ²our men ³would have to fight hindered by the weight of their armor and by the motion of the waves. When Cæsar observed that his men did not fight ⁴with their usual alacrity, he ordered the galleys to be drawn up near the exposed flank of the enemy, and ⁵weapons to be hurled ⁵from them against the enemy.

2. This manœuvre⁶ was ⁷of great use to our men, for the shape of the vessels and the nature of our artillery⁸ so startled the barbarians that they halted and fell back a little. Our men, ⁹one from one ship and another from another, flocked to whatever standards they first⁸ fell in with, and were ¹⁰in great confusion because they could neither keep their lines nor ¹¹get a firm footing.

3. The enemy ¹²kept attacking⁸ them vigorously¹³; but⁸ as soon as they had all reached¹⁴ dry ground, they charged upon the enemy and put them to flight; but they could not follow them far because they had no cavalry.

4. The ships which conveyed the cavalry, ¹⁵just as they were approaching Britain, were driven back by a sudden storm, some to the place ¹⁶they had started from, and some to the lower part of the island. The rest⁸ of the ships were disabled by the storm and by the high tides.

127. ¹ *Going out from the ships.* — ² *Dat.* — ³ Use the impers. construction, 101. — ⁴ *With the same alacrity which they were accustomed to use.* — ⁵ *Thence.* — ⁶ *Rēs.* — ⁷ *Not gen.* — ⁸ *Tormenta.* — ⁹ *Another from another ship,* 46. — ¹⁰ *Greatly disturbed.* — ¹¹ *Stand firmly.* — ¹² *The imp. of continued or repeated action,* 98, 99. — ¹³ *An adverb may be used, or the adverbial phrase with great force.* Which is better, *cum māgnā vī* or *māgnā cum vī*? — ¹⁴ *Stood on.* — ¹⁵ *When.* — ¹⁶ *Whence they had started,*

128. Chaps. 31–38. 1. Cæsar suspected, ¹from the fact that the barbarians had stopped giving hostages, that they were forming ²some new plan,^s and would try^s to intercept ³his return to the continent. Accordingly, since he had twelve ships which were ⁴entirely disabled, he repaired the others^s with the timber and bronze of these; but before he could set sail, he saw a cloud of dust ⁵in that place where the men of the seventh legion had gone for the purpose of reaping the grain.

2. Suspecting that the enemy were assembling to make an attack upon the legion, he left a few cohorts ⁶to guard the camp, and set out with all the rest of his army to relieve that legion. ⁷After a short time he led the legions back into camp, where for several days ⁸in succession he was detained by storms.

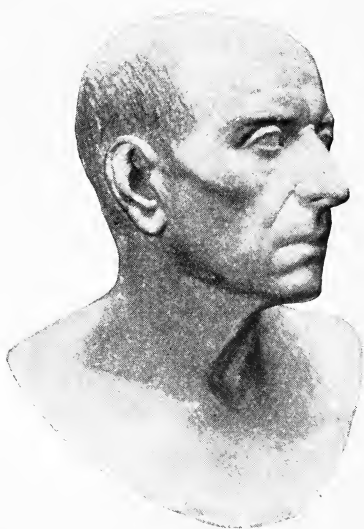
3. When the weather was suitable, he drew up his forces in line of battle before the camp, and the enemy, having collected a great multitude of infantry and cavalry, came against him, but were speedily put to flight. After a few days he set sail, and all the ships reached the continent in safety.

128. ¹Ex eō quod. — ²Something of new plan. — ³Eum reditū. — ⁴Most heavily damaged. — ⁵In that part into which part. — ⁶Which might be for a guard, 143, 68. — ⁷A short time having intervened. — ⁸Continuus.

PART II.

**BASED UPON CICERO: CATILINE I.-IV.,
AND ARCHIAS.**





MARCUS TULLIUS CICERO.

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.

CATILINE I.

NOTE. — Thorough preparation of the text of Cicero ought to be sufficient preparation for these exercises. The text furnishes the vocabulary and the models of syntax, order and arrangement, idioms, etc.

NOTE. — The numbers affixed to grammar subjects at the head of sections, also those in parentheses here and there in the exercises, are references to the Grammatical Index, p. 205. Words inclosed in brackets [] are to be omitted in translation. A superior s (e.g. last^s) refers to the Table of Synonyms, p. 193.

Apposition, **48**. Questions, Direct and Indirect, **144, 146**.
Interrogative Particles, **147**.

1. Chap. 1. 1. Last^s night; night before last. 2. Nay more; the world; desirous of revolution. 3. Cicero, the consul, delivered this oration. 4. This oration was delivered by Cicero, the consul. 5. Did not (*nōnne*) Catiline abuse the patience of the senate? 6. Did (*-ne*) his unbridled audacity baffle them? 7. The senate was called together in (to) a strongly fortified place. 8. What were you doing last night? 9. We know what you were doing. 10. We know where you were. 11. Who of us (**121**) does not know what (of) plan you adopted? 12. And yet you are alive. 13. Alive? Nay more, you have come into the senate. 14. Are we doing our duty by (satisfying) the state? 15. Each one of us is marked for slaughter. 16. Catiline ought to be marked for slaughter. 17. Pray, how long shall you be plotting our ruin^s? 18. We, the consuls, see all this (*plur.*).

19. You, Catiline, ought^s to be killed^s by the consul's hand. 20. Ought (*perf.*) Cicero to have killed (*pres.*) Catiline with his own hand?

Genitive with Judicial Verbs, 87. Purpose Clause after Verbs of Fearing, 142.

2. Chap. 2. 1. Daily^s (*two expressions*); too cruelly. 2. Let the consul see (*pres. subj.*) that the republic receive no harm. 3. The consul saw what (of) harm the republic had received. 4. The senate decreed that (**ut**) Gracchus should be slain^s. 5. Now for twenty days (the twentieth day) you have suffered (*pres.*) Catiline to live. 6. He should have been killed at once. 7. The edge of your authority is growing dull. 8. Catiline does not abandon^s his effrontery. 9. Cicero, the consul, desired not to seem hasty. 10. But he condemned himself (**sē ipse**) for his inactivity. 11. He condemned Catiline for his audacity. 12. Do you condemn yourself for your shiftlessness? 13. Does not the number of the enemy increase daily? 14. Daily their commander is contriving the ruin^s of the state. 15. I do not fear^s that I arrested Catiline too late. 16. Nor am I afraid^s that I have been too cruel. 17. He feared that the number of the enemy would increase. 18. You cannot take a step (move yourself) against the state. 19. He feared that he could not take a step against the state. 20. Although you know^s it not (*part.*, 123), we shall keep watch over you.

Indirect Discourse, 106. Tenses of the Infinitive, 113. Roman Calendar, 159.

3. Chap. 3. 1. What can a private house keep within (by) its walls^s? 2. Forget that infamous purpose (88)

of yours (*iste*). 3. Manlius will be in arms on the 25th of October. 4. Do you remember that Manlius was in arms on the first of October? 5. Manlius is Catiline's accomplice and tool. 6. Is it to be wondered at that I was deceived? 7. I was not deceived in the day (*change to act. form*). 8. The slaughter of the nobility was set for the 29th of October. 9. Do you remember that many [of the] chief men of the state fled from Rome? 10. Shall you be satisfied with the slaughter of us (our slaughter) who remain? 11. Do you fear that I shall not fortify Præneste? 12. On the 2d of November a night attack was made upon Præneste. 13. I not only hear of, but even see, what you are doing. 14. Why, do you not feel that you are hemmed in by my watchfulness?

Partitive Genitive, 81. Ablative of Time, 22.

4. Chap. 4. 1. To keep a sharp lookout; the death of us all. 2. Where in the world? at Læca's (house); into Læca's house; at that time (25). 3. I keep a sharp lookout for the safety of the state^s. 4. I know^s where you were last night. 5. Several [of] your confederates assembled in (to) Læca's house. 6. There are certain men here in the senate who were there that night. 7. Do you deny that you came to the same place? 8. The Roman senate is the most venerable council^s in (of) the world. 9. Certain men are plotting the death of all of us. 10. Can you then deny that you were at Læca's? 11. Have you decided^s whom to take (*pres. subj.*) with you? 12. Presently I shall go out myself. 13. I know not (*nēsciō*) where in the world we are (*ind. quest.*). 14. Cicero did not know where in the world he was.

Ablative of Separation, 19. Imperative Mood, 96. *Iam dūdum*, etc. with the Present, 95.

5. Chap. 5. 1. Such being the case; as many as possible. 2. In the case of one man; as long as; as often as. 3. Too long have the gates been open. 4. Since (*cum*, 50) the gates are open, depart from the city. 5. Take (lead) out with you as many as possible [of] your friends. 6. Free the city from fear. 7. I shall be freed from great fear. 8. Too long has the safety of the state been jeopardized. 9. Jupiter Stator himself is between you and me (me and you). 10. At the last election of consuls Cicero by his own efforts (by himself) withstood Catiline (*dat.*). 11. As long as I could defend myself by personal (private) watchfulness, I did not employ^s a public guard^s. 12. I shall defend myself without exciting any public commotion (*abl. abs.*). 13. I dare not yet order^s you to be put to death. 14. But I do bid^s you depart from the city. 15. I have long been urging you to depart. 16. You have long been hesitating to free us from fear. 17. I advise you to go (*ut v. subj.*) into exile. 18. Begone from the senate.

Relative of Characteristic, 149. Dative with Compounds, 64.

6. Chap. 6. 1. There was nobody in the city who did not fear Catiline. 2. Who is there that does not hate him? 3. Who was there that did not hate him? 4. The mark of domestic infamy is branded upon your life. 5. When (*cum*, 172) you have ensnared a young man, you offer him a sword for his reckless daring. 6. The ruin^s (*plur.*) of your fortunes is hanging over you. 7. No one of us is ignorant of this. 8. On the 31st of December you stood in the Comitium, weapon in hand (with a

weapon). 9. You have long (**iam dūdum**) been standing in the Comitium. 10. The fortune of the Roman people stood in the way of (**obstō**) your frantic attempt (madness). 11. You aimed many a thrust (many thrusts) at (**in**) me, [when I was] consul elect. 12. No one of us is ignorant that your dagger has slipped from your hands. 13. The consul will wrest that dagger out of your (**69**) hands.

Conditions, Third Form, **55**. Dative of Agent, **63**.

7. Chap. 7. 1. A little while ago; as soon as; within the memory of man. 2. I am not moved by hatred, but^s by pity. 3. Who out of this (so) great throng is not afraid of you? 4. Why! You are looked upon with hostility by all (hostile eyes of all). 5. As soon as you came into the senate, you saw the benches emptied. 6. This has never (**numquam**) happened^s to me. 7. I should think (*imp. subj.*) I (*dat.*) ought to abandon^s my house. 8. You ought to abandon the city. 9. If my parents were afraid^s of me, I should avoid the sight of them. 10. If my country hated me, I should fear^s her power^s. 11. Your country [though] silent, [yet] speaks to you. 12. You (*dat.*) ought to fear^s your country's authority. 13. But now she is wholly (*adj.*, **40**) in fear. 14. If you had departed, you would have delivered her from this fear (taken away this fear from her, **69**). 15. No plan is formed against her that is inconsistent with your villany. 16. If my fear were groundless, I should cease to fear.

Conditions, Second Form, **54**. Locative Case, **116**.

8. Chap. 8. 1. To be inconsistent with; I will let you know (make that you know); violent hands. 2. If your

country should speak^s thus with you, she would not gain her object. 3. She (*dat.*) ought to use force. 4. Catiline was willing to give himself into custody. 5. To avoid (for the sake^s of avoiding) suspicion, he is willing to dwell^s at my house. 6. But Cicero will not keep him at his house. 7. If you were to live with me, you would not escape suspicion. 8. I asked him to keep me at his house. 9. We were not safe (*adv.*) in the same house (walls^s) with him. 10. Consign that life of yours to flight and solitude. 11. If the senate had decreed^s that he should go into exile, he would have complied. 12. If you should go out of the city, you would free the republic from fear. 13. I have long had hard work to keep (hardly keep) these men away from you. 14. But they are willing to escort you to the gates.

Conditions, First Form, 53. Optative Subjunctive, 166.

9. Chap. 9. 1. It is worth the cost, worth while; but if, on the other hand. 2. O that the immortal gods would crush you! 3. O that the gods had given you that intention! 4. O that you were terrified by my voice! 5. I wish you would go into exile! 6. It will be worth the cost, if you do (shall) go into exile. 7. If you wish to subserve my glory, you will proceed straight into exile. 8. If you should go into exile, you would kindle [a flame of] odium against me. 9. If you wish to make war upon your country, you will separate yourself from good [men]. 10. Shame will never recall you from infamy. 11. I know that that silver eagle will be fatal to you. 12. Can you longer do without that eagle (19)? 13. You have set up a sanctuary of crime^s in your own house. 14. When you set out (*part.*) for slaughter, you worship that eagle.

Ablative of Cause, 5. Emphasis, 74.

10. Chap. 10. 1. Not only . . . but also; neither . . . nor. 2. *Sometime* that unbridled passion of yours will bring you (*dat.*) sorrow. 3. Did nature create you *for* (*ad*) *this insane passion*? 4. Would that *you*, Catiline, were a good citizen! 5. If you see no (*nūllus*) good man, you will exult with joy. 6. You have got together a band of ruffians. 7. You revel in delight [when you are] lying on the ground. 8. You will have an opportunity to plot against (*cf. habēs ubi ostentēs*) the property of peaceful men. 9. In a short time you will be exhausted by *cold* [and] *hunger* [and] *want*. 10. *So much* has been accomplished. 11. That which you have wickedly undertaken is robbery rather than war.

Ablative of Comparison, 6.

11. Chap. 11. 1. To make return, return a favor. 2. What is dearer to you than life? 3. The republic is far (much) dearer to me than life. 4. If you should find^s Catiline to be an enemy, would you allow^s him to depart? 5. He is waited for in the camp of the enemy. 6. Can you suffer him to be let into the city? 7. Are you prevented^s by the custom^s of *our ancestors*? 8. Those who revolt from the state *never* hold the rights of citizens. 9. A very fine return you are making to me. 10. Will you *through fear of odium* neglect the safety of the citizens? 11. Inactivity is more earnestly to be feared than severity. 12. If Italy is laid waste by war, you will be consumed in a conflagration of odium.

Relative of Result, 156. Predicate Accusative, 34. Supine in *ū*, 170.

12. Chap. 12. 1. To have the same feeling, hold the same views. 2. Forever; to punish^s (*two ways*). 3. If

I thought^s you held the same views, I should not reply. 4. The best thing to do is to reply briefly (few things) to these solemn words. 5. Surely I have no fear of polluting (*use nē*) myself with the blood of this parricide. 6. I have always regarded unpopularity incurred through virtue as great glory. 7. I regard Catiline [as] a parricide. 8. I think he is not a citizen. 9. Is he a more distinguished man than Saturninus? 10. By the death of Catiline alone (*abl. abs.*) the conspiracy will not be crushed forever. 11. No one is so^s stupid as not to know this. 12. The conspiracy cannot be crushed by the death^s of one man (*abl. abs.*). 13. I am not so stupid as to conceal what (that which) I see. 14. No one was so bad as to believe this.

Hortatory Subjunctive, 165. Ablative Absolute denoting Condition, 1.

13. Chap. 13. 1. Alive or dead; to punish^s. 2. You, conscript fathers, have long been involved in the dangers of this conspiracy. 3. If Catiline is left, we shall be involved in his plots. 4. Let this (so) great band of robbers be removed. 5. If he alone is removed, the danger will remain. 6. If you drink (53) cold water, you will be relieved at first^s. 7. But drinking (*inf.*) cold water is not the best thing to do. 8. Let a wall^s separate the bad from the good. 9. If bad men depart, the city will be relieved. 10. Let [those] who have united (themselves) with Catiline depart to the impious war. 11. Thee, O Jupiter, we have rightly named the Stay of this city. 12. May Jove keep (166) this man away from his altars and temples and from the lives (*sing.*) of all the citizens. 13. The consuls are so diligent (of such diligence) as to lay open the whole conspiracy.

CATILINE II.

Causal Clauses, 49-51. Dative of Reference, 69.

14. Chap. 1. 1. To snatch a thing (*aliquid*) from any one's (*alicui*) hands. 2. At last, fellow-citizens, Catiline has been driven out of the city. 3. Or he has departed of his own accord (*ipse*). 4. He has threatened the city with fire and sword. 5. That dagger has been wrested out of his hands. 6. The consul wrested the dagger out of Catiline's hands. 7. He is broken down with sorrow because I am alive. 8. He is prostrated with grief because the blade of his dagger is not stained with blood (bloody). 9. You are no longer in fear within the walls^s of your houses (*adj.*). 10. Let the city rejoice because it has rid itself of (thrown up) such a curse. 11. Catiline is wailing because the city has been snatched from his grasp (jaws).

Impersonal Verbs, 100.

15. Chap. 2. 1. To be vexed, indignant; to be punished. 2. Debt; the public welfare. 3. With too small a retinue; in boyhood. 4. Catiline should have been (*use imp. of oportet*) arrested (*pres.*) rather than let go. 5. So^s deadly a foe ought long ago to have been put to death. 6. How many are there who do not believe (149) what I report? 7. If I had thought that the public welfare (*rēs pūblica*) required his death, I should have removed him. 8. I saw that I should be (*use fore ut, 75*) overwhelmed with odium. 9. Now we can fight openly, because (*cum*) we see the enemy plainly. 10. Would that you had believed what I reported (*subjunc. by attraction, 162*). 11. You ought to have believed. 12. You may

take (*cf. licet intellegātis*, 176) with you my (65) Munatius. 13. Catiline was permitted^s to take out all his forces. 14. I am vexed that he did not take them all with him. 15. You know how much I am vexed.

Conditions, First Form, 53. Imperative (*fut.*), 97.

16. Chap. 3. 1. Metellus ought to hold that levy. 2. I utterly despise those who are flitting about the Forum. 3. Remember that I know^s to whom Apulia has been assigned. 4. Remember that I disclosed^s all their plans yesterday. 5. You are greatly mistaken, if you think those country bankrupts are to be feared. 6. Remember that even (*ipse*) Catiline was alarmed [and] fled. 7. If they stay at home, they are not to be feared. 8. They were greatly mistaken, if they thought that Apulia would be (*fore ut*) assigned to them. 9. Be assured (*fut. imper. of sciō*) that Catiline knows what I think.

Accusative in Exclamations, 28. Locative, 116.

17. Chap. 4. 1. So great . . . as; to live on intimate terms with. 2. You see that men like Catiline have formed a conspiracy openly. 3. If they are assassins, they agree with Catiline. 4. A great number of ruined men were collected at Rome. 5. Poor^s Catiline pines with longing for (of) these assassins. 6. If they should set out by the Aurelian road^s (23) they would overtake him towards evening. 7. O fortunate men, if they do overtake him! 8. O wretched Catiline, if they do not overtake him! 9. O fortunate republic, if it gets rid of this rabble! 10. There was never such (so great) villany in any^s man as in him. 11. There was no scoundrel in Rome whom he did not live on intimate terms with.

Ablative of Means or Instrument, 11.

18. Chap. 5. 1. Nothing but; in a hopeless case, hopelessly lost. 2. He has been trained by the practice of daring crimes to endure (*use the inf.*) cold and hunger. 3. And yet this same man is using up the aids to virtuous living (of virtue). 4. If Catiline's companions follow him, O happy [shall] we [be], O fortunate [will be] the republic! 5. But they are in a hopeless case. 6. They have thought of nothing but crime, nothing but audacity. 7. Let us think (165) of nothing but glory, nothing but the public welfare. 8. There is no king for you to fear (whom you may fear, 149). 9. If you remain in Rome, look out for the doom that hangs over you. 10. Who can bear this, that men should be smeared with ointment? 11. By whatever means I can I shall cure what can be cured.

Cum-temporal (historical), 172. Accusative of Limit, 30.

19. Chap. 6. 1. There are [some] who say; yesterday. 2. Nay more; on his own account. 3. But there were some who said (149) that I drove Catiline into exile. 4. Who is so excessively modest that he (who) cannot bear the voice of the consul? 5. When I summoned the senate, Catiline came. 6. When I had driven Catiline into exile, I summoned the senate. 7. I ask^s (from) you, fellow-citizens, whether you were in the Forum yesterday or not (145). 8. Why do you hesitate to go to the place (thither) where (whither) you have long (**iam pridem**, 95) been preparing to go? 9. When I asked him what he had been doing at Læca's, he hesitated. 10. Of course (I suppose) that [famous] silver eagle was sent to Massilia. 11. Was it not sent to Rome?

12. Catiline did not go to Massilia. 13. He went to the camp of Manlius. 14. Are you aware^s that he had built a shrine for that eagle in his own house (116) ?

Predicate Nominative, 118. Gerundive (Genitive), 90. Genitive of Price, 83.

20. Chap. 7. 1. Catiline has suddenly^s abandoned^s the design of making war. 2. When Catiline had been driven out, did he go into exile? 3. It is said that I (I am said to) have sent into exile an innocent [man]. 4. There are some who think him not bad, but unfortunate. 5. I am thought to be not a diligent consul, but a cruel tyrant. 6. Am I a cruel tyrant or not? 7. It is not worth while [for me] to be thought a tyrant (*pred. acc.*). 8. It is worth while to administer the affairs of state. 9. It is worth while to incur odium for the sake of preserving the state. 10. I have not abandoned^s my design of removing danger from you. 11. What should you say, if Catiline were commanding an army of the enemy (55)? 12. I fear^s that he will be hovering around in arms near the city. 13. He has not gone to Massilia, but to the camp of Manlius.

Ablative of Manner, 10. Order of Words, 122. Emphasis, 74.

21. Chap. 8. 1. *You* are an enemy. 2. Do you not *admit^s* that you are an enemy? 3. Those who remain I wish not so much to punish^s as to restore to their senses (themselves to themselves). 4. I have said *nothing* about those whom I do not fear. 5. In what way can these things be cured? 6. The forces of Catiline are made up from six classes of men. 7. The appearance of those men who have great possessions is very respectable. 8. I desire^s *in every way*

to gain over these men to the republic. 9. In *no other* way can these things be done. 10. You are mistaken, if you expect new accounts from Catiline. 11. Those rich men do not seem to me likely (about) to bear arms against the republic. 12. Is it worth while for them to remain in Rome for the sake of bearing arms against the republic?

Dative with Compounds, 64. Dative of Indirect Object, 66.

22. Chap. 9. 1. First . . . secondly . . . finally. 2. I give them this warning. 3. This direction must be given (this must be directed) to those of the second class. 4. I give them this direction, exactly (one and) the same as (which) to all the rest^s. 5. You cannot attain that which you are attempting^s. 6. There is an excellent spirit^s in the better classes. 7. Finally, the immortal gods will render aid^s in person (present) to this fair city. 8. I myself provide for the public welfare. 9. Catiline has succeeded to Manlius. 10. Do these men expect to obtain that which they covet with such a (**tam**) detestable spirit^s? 11. The colonies as a whole^s are [composed] of excellent men. 12. But these are colonists who make an extravagant display (display themselves extravagantly). 13. If you wish to be saved, you must call up (*pass.*) Sulla from the shades.

Complementary Infinitive, 109. Ablative of Specification, 21.

23. Chap. 10. 1. Some of whom . . . others of whom; through bad management; as soon as possible. 2. The fourth class is [composed] of men who will never get their heads above water (emerge). 3. This class is in its very nature peculiarly Catiline's. 4. Some of them

through bad management, others through extravagance, are staggering under the weight of debt (in debt). 5. They are shameless in their lives (*sing.*), and they are many in number. 6. I do not understand^s this,— how these swindlers can make (become) active soldiers. 7. The jail cannot hold all these parricides, assassins, [and] criminals. 8. The last class is composed of men who are Catiline's bosom friends (from C.'s embrace and bosom). 9. Why do these poor^s [wretches] wish to perish basely? 10. What do they want (wish for themselves)? 11. To learn to brandish daggers and scatter poison?

Cum-causal, 50. Ablative with words of Plenty and Want, **16.**

24. Chap. 11. 1. On this side . . . on that; utter despair. 2. It is a war greatly to be feared, since Catiline has such a famous [body of] troops. 3. Marshal now against his body-guard the flower and strength^s of all Italy. 4. Set that wounded gladiator against your consuls and commanders. 5. *We* are supplied with a treasury and with revenues, which *he* lacks. 6. In all respects (things) the flower of Italy surpasses^s the troops of Catiline. 7. Since he is in want^s of all these things he cannot be a match for (respond to) us. 8. On the one side contends honesty, on the other treachery; on this side justice, on that injustice. 9. Finally, well-grounded hope is in conflict with utter despair. 10. Since the contest is of this kind, the immortal gods will be on our side (with us).

Second Periphrastic Conjugation, 128. Dative of Agent, **63.**

25. Chap. 12. 1. A sufficient guard; measures have been taken; provision has been made. 2. If you will

defend your own homes, I will provide a sufficient guard for the city. 3. Since these things were so, Cicero provided for the city.' 4. Although (*quamquam*, 52) Catiline thought the gladiators were surely (*adj.*) for him, they were better disposed (of better mind) than the patricians. 5. I have sent Metellus ahead to check (143) all his movements. 6. Those enemies whom Catiline has left in the city must be warned again and again. 7. I cannot forget that many have remained in the city. 8. We must live with these men. 9. You must die for the city. 10. I must provide for the city. 11. If I detect any attempt against the city, I cannot shut my eyes [to it]. 12. The republic does not lack (*egeō*) vigilant consuls. 13. If any one makes any disturbance in the city, he will find me watchful.

Result Clauses with **Ut** and **Ut nōn**, 155. Ablative with **Frētus**, 9.

26. Chap. 13. 1. Acting in a civil capacity, — in the garb of peace. 2. I alone shall be your commander [though] acting in a civil capacity. 3. I (*dat.*) must so^s administer all these things that there may be no outbreak. 4. This war is so treacherous that a few good men may perish. 5. If we rely (*part.*) upon human wisdom, we shall not be safe^s. 6. But relying upon the many (and) sure tokens of the gods, I promise that you shall all be safe. 7. If you supplicate them, they will be here in person. 8. The danger is so great that you ought to pray to them. 9. This city, which is the most beautiful of all, will be defended from the infamous crime of desperate men (which city is, *etc.*, this will, *etc.*, 153). 10. All the forces of our enemies by land and sea have been overcome^s.

CATILINE III.

Purpose Clause with **ut**, 139. Agreement of the Relative Pronoun, 43.

27. Chap. 1. 1. To-day; a few days ago; the lives of you all. 2. Through (because^s of) my labors^s, the city has been preserved. 3. He who founded this city has been raised to [a place among] the immortal gods. 4. I have saved your (**vester**) lives, that I might be in honor among you. 5. I who have restored the city to you ought^s to be [held] in honor. 6. The consul was vigilant, in order that the citizens might be safe^s. 7. That the citizens, who were ignorant, might know in what way the conspiracy was discovered^s, the consul explained [it] to them. 8. I will so explain the matter that you will understand^s [it]. 9. Since (**quoniam**, 49) you do not know in what way we extinguished those fires, I will now briefly explain.

Inceptive and Conative Imperfect, 99. Ablative with **ūtor**, 24.

28. Chap. 2. 1. Yesterday; war beyond the Alps. 2. A very patriotic man; an outbreak in Gaul. 3. At that time I was spending all my days and nights in an effort to (**in eō ut**) find out the cause of the tumult. 4. I know that those who remain will be weak without Catiline. 5. I knew that they were spending their days and nights in an effort to tamper with the ambassadors. 6. They were trying to tamper with the ambassadors. 7. We were trying to drive Catiline from the city. 8. I was trying to provide for your safety. 9. Now I have such a grasp of (so comprehend) the subject that I know what plots they are laying (they are plotting). 10. When you

see (*fut. perf.*) with your eyes the crime^s itself, then you will provide for your safety with all your hearts (minds). 11. Gaius Pomptinus entertains all noble and generous sentiments towards the state (*cf. quī . . . sentirent*). 12. I make continual use of (use continually) the aid of several young men from Reate (*adj.*). 13. Both they and our men used their swords.

Priusquam with Indicative and Subjunctive, 171. Infinitive as Subject, 111.

29. Chap. 3. 1. The seals of the letters that were found^s in that company were unbroken. 2. Just at dawn (when now it was dawning) Gabinius, as yet suspecting nothing, was arrested. 3. Then I summoned^s Statilius and after him Cethegus. 4. Many distinguished men decided (it pleased, etc.) that Gabinius should be summoned. 5. The letters were laid before the senate before I opened them. 6. I decided not to open the letters before summoning^s (I summoned) the senate. 7. The consul decided to convene the senate in full numbers (crowded). 8. He said that he would not open the letters before the senate had convened. 9. It pleased the Allobroges that I should send Statilius. 10. Cethegus used swords and daggers. 11. The prætor was trying to find the swords and daggers in Cethegus's house.

Relative Clause of Purpose, 143. Ablative of Accompaniment, 2.

30. Chap. 4. 1. Leaders in the city ; orders were given. 2. Volturcius was brought in before he should recover from his fear. 3. He recovered with difficulty from his great fear. 4. I urge you to declare^s fearlessly what you know (*subj. by attraction*, 162). 5. Catiline was approach-

ing the city with an army. 6. When the leaders have fired (fut. perf.) the city in (from) all parts, Catiline will be at hand. 7. He will be here to pick up the fugitives. 8. Slaves were sent to him for him to (which he might) use. 9. It pleased him to use the help of slaves. 10. Orders were given to the Gauls to (ut) be at hand with cavalry. 11. Cavalry was sent into Italy to (quī) unite (themselves) with the infantry. 12. Lentulus thought that the sovereignty of the city was destined (necesse) to come to him. 13. In accordance with (ex) the Sibylline oracles Lentulus is the famous (ille) third Cornelius. 14. Lentulus had a dispute with Cethegus because (49) the latter did not think^a he was that third Cornelius.

Ablative of Degree, 7. Cum-concessive, 61. Genitive with Adjectives, 76.

31. Chap. 5. 1. A little while ago (before); some time afterwards. 2. At first . . . at last (finally). 3. Cut the string and read what is written on the tablets. 4. Cethegus made some sort of reply (replied something) about the swords and daggers that (neut., 43) we discovered^a at his house. 5. Do you recognize the image of your renowned grandfather? 6. I asked^a Lentulus if (-ne) his grandfather was fond of fine cutlery. 7. That image, even [though] speechless, ought to have called him away from such wickedness. 8. Was he fond of swords and daggers? 9. Volturcius was brought in to show how great the power of conscience is (was). 10. What have I [to do] with you? 11. Why did you come to my house? 12. Though he was always powerful in effrontery, even this failed him at that time. 13. A little while ago the

letters were read aloud. 14. Catiline knew who he was from the person (him whom) he had sent to him. 15. We know^s who you are from the letters (*supply the rel.*) you have written. 16. At first he refused to (denied that he would) acknowledge his own hand, but some time afterwards he confessed^s. 17. Though Gabinius at first made an impudent reply (replied impudently) he finally confessed.

Causal Clause with **quod**, 49. Ablative Absolute denoting Cause, 1.

32. Chap. 6. 1. To render thanks; to resign (an office); after the founding of the city. 2. It pleased the senate to pass a vote of (render) thanks to Cicero in the strongest terms. 3. Since the decree^s of the senate had not been written out, Cicero explained it from memory. 4. The senate praised Flaccus and Pomptinus, because they had rendered (given) brave and loyal service to the consul. 5. That able man, my colleague, removed from the public counsels the participants in (of) the conspiracy. 6. Lentulus resigned the prætorship. 7. Some time afterwards, he was delivered into custody. 8. The same decree was passed (same thing was decreed) against Cethegus, Statilius, [and] Gabinius, all of whom (who all) were present. 9. Also against Cassius, because he had claimed for himself the charge of firing the city. 10. And also a thanksgiving was decreed in these words^s: "because Cicero has saved the republic." 11. That thanksgiving, which was decreed in my name, was appointed because the republic had been saved. 12. We did not punish^s Lentulus, because he (who, 51) was prætor. 13. Gaius Marius had no scruple to prevent (*use quō minus*) his killing Glaucia [who was] prætor.

Ablative Absolute denoting Time, 1. Conditions, Third Form, 55.

33. Chap. 7. 1. I foresaw that, when their leaders had been captured, all their hopes would collapse. 2. We stand in no great fear of (do not greatly fear) Lucius Cassius, seeing that Catiline is removed (*abl. abs.*). 3. Catiline has the ability and the courage (can and dares) to thwart the designs of the consul. 4. Since he has access to (of) everybody, he knows everything. 5. There is nothing which (149) he does not personally (himself) attend to. 6. If he had not been so^s keen, so bold and so crafty, we should not have feared him. 7. When I was trying to drive (99) him to open marauding, I wished to push aside from your necks this (so) great weight of evil. 8. If he had not known everything, he would not have proclaimed the day of doom so long in advance (by so much before). 9. If I had not thwarted all his plans^s, we should have had to fight (105) with him. 10. After he was removed, we freed the republic from danger. 11. Now that he is absent, this conspiracy has been clearly discovered. 12. And we hold under arrest (arrested) the other leaders of the conspiracy.

Ablative of Time, 22. First Periphrastic Conjugation, 127.

34. Chap. 8. 1. So many of which; struck by lightning; to remember. 2. These important interests (so great things) were pre-arranged by the immortal gods. 3. It hardly seems possible that I could have managed everything (I hardly seem to have been able, etc.). 4. The gods were about to bring us help^s in person (present). 5. We have seen at night torches in the west. 6. Thunderbolts have been hurled, and the earth has quaked (been moved). 7. So many of these things (which things

so many) have taken^s place that the gods themselves seem to have predicted the war. 8. For, surely, you remember that yonder (*ille*) Romulus was struck by lightning. 9. At that time the soothsayers said that the downfall of the city was approaching. 10. I am not going to pass by these things which are now taking place. 11. If we had not appeased the gods in every [possible] way, we should have seen the downfall of the empire. 12. Yesterday we were about to turn the statue^s of Jupiter towards the east. 13. The statue was turned in the direction opposite to what [it was] before.

Ablative of Agent, 4. Dative with Special Verbs, 71.

35. Chap. 9. 1. At this point; this very morning. 2. At this point, who can deny that everything is controlled by the immortal gods? 3. Who is so infatuated as to (*quī*) deny that slaughter and fire are preparing (*pass.*) for this city? 4. These crimes^s are planned by infamous citizens. 5. The destruction of the republic was prepared for by the conspirators. 6. This very morning the statue^s of Jupiter was set up so as to face (be turned towards) the temple of Concord. 7. On the turning of the statue (*abl. abs.*) towards the senate, all things were brought to light. 8. If the conspirators should oppose me, they would be worthy of the severest (greatest) punishment. 9. If you should attempt^s to resist the immortal gods, you would be taking too much upon yourselves. 10. I am not going to take too much upon myself. 11. Yonder Jupiter resisted these impious men. 12. The immortal gods deprived them of all discretion. 13. The Gauls are the only nation that (154) is able and not unwilling to make war upon us.

Accusative, Subject of Infinitive, 31. Accusative of the Gerundive, 92.

36. Chap. 10. 1. There is no need of saying; to regard as enemies. 2. Wherefore, fellow-citizens, celebrate the days of thanksgiving. 3. For recall all the just honors [that have been] rendered (held) by you to the immortal gods. 4. Do you not yourselves remember the dissensions of Marius and Sulla? 5. I remember that, when Octavius was consul, this place flowed (*pres. inf.*) with the blood of citizens. 6. There is no need of saying that Sulla avenged^s the cruelty of Marius's victory. 7. All these dissensions tended to the alteration of (changing) the form of government (*rēs pūblica*). 8. Did they not tend to the destruction of (destroying) the republic? 9. Do such dissensions tend to the preservation of (preserving) the city? 10. These men desired^s not a restoration of harmony, but the extermination of brave men. 11. This war is the most cruel within the memory of man. 12. The citizens could not (were not able) have withstood (*pres. inf.*) so great slaughter.

Complementary Infinitive, 109.

37. Chap. 11. 1. I wish you to preserve in your memory these triumphs of mine. 2. The speech of men will tend (*pertineō*) to prolong the memory of my consulship. 3. Less worthy [men] can be charmed with mute memorials of honor. 4. I know^s that the memory of my deeds will become established in the records of your literature. 5. There are two citizens in this city, one (46) of whom is dumb, the other silent. 6. I wish the boundaries of your empire to be set in the regions of the sky. 7. I hope that the seat of this same empire will be preserved (*use fore ut w. subj.*).

Second Periphrastic Conjugation, **128**. Dative with Special Verbs, **71**.
Passive of Intransitive Verbs used Impersonally, **101**.

38. Chap. 12. 1. It is your (my, etc.) duty. 2. I am injured, you are injured, they are injured. 3. Those (*dat.*) who wage foreign wars do not have to live with those whom they have subdued. 4. My duty it was to see that you were not harmed. 5. Your duty it is to see that I am not harmed. 6. I have great support among good [citizens], and those who have secured it (which who have secured) for me will see that I am not harmed. 7. If all the assaults of domestic foes have been repelled from you, you must see that they be not (lest they be) turned against me. 8. What higher [step] is there to which (whither) I care (it pleases me) to ascend? 9. If you pray to yonder Jupiter, your guardian, you will be in perpetual peace. 10. We must not neglect the power of conscience.



CATILINE IV.

Genitive with Verbs of Memory, **88**. Subjunctive: Potential, **167**;
Deliberative, **164**.

39. Chap. 1. 1. I am anxious about the dangers of the state. 2. Forgetful (*part.*) of these dangers, I think only of you and your families. 3. If my good will towards you is agreeable in your sorrows, you will not forget my misfortunes. 4. The condition of the consulship is that (**ut**) I should forget my own safety. 5. You are the man (he) whose (*dat.*) house has never been free from sorrow. 6. Why should I not endure much, provided that I remedy many evils? 7. I must endure much. 8. Why should

my couch be never secure from the danger of death? 9. Why should not this be the issue of my consulship that I may rescue all^s Italy from devastation? 10. If I have rescued the Vestal virgins from bitter outrage, I rejoice. 11. Why should Lentulus think his name is designed by fate for the overthrow of the republic?

Dative with Compounds, 64. Infinitive with Accusative after Verbs of Hoping, 114.

40. Chap. 2. 1. The slaughter of you all (77); the safety of us all. 2. In proportion as I deserve, according to my deserts. 3. Wherefore, conscript fathers, in the first^s place, cease to think^s about me. 4. Secondly, if anything^s happens (*fut. perf.*) to me, look out for my wife and children^s. 5. The gods, who preside over this city, will requite you according to your deserts. 6. You are not so (that) iron-hearted as (*quī*) not to be affected by the death of a brave man. 7. If anything happens to me, I hope the republic will take in its arms (embrace) that little boy of mine. 8. I hope that all will be safe. 9. Cicero hoped to die with a calm mind. 10. Consider all the storms that threaten, if you do not devote yourselves to the state. 11. No one is left to await (*ad. w. gerundive*) the issue of this day.

Ablative of Gerund and Gerundive, 93. Predicate Genitive of Possession, 82.

41. Chap. 3. 1. An honor which, etc.; to lay before the senate (for action), (for information). 2. More widely than is thought. 3. First you passed [a vote of] thanks to me, because by my diligence the conspiracy was discovered.^s 4. Secondly, you gave Lentulus and the rest^s into custody. 5. Lastly you decreed a thanksgiving in

my name. 6. It belongs to the consul to lay the matter before the senate. 7. Great madness is rife (**versor**) in the republic. 8. It is the consul's duty to crush the conspiracy. 9. You must determine^s before night what order to pass (what you may decree) about the punishment of the conspirators. 10. It is your duty to decide^s about the punishment. 11. I hope you will decide before night. 12. I did not by any means lay open this conspiracy by forbearance and procrastination (*ger.*). 13. You will not crush the conspiracy by compelling Lentulus to resign; by^s giving rewards to Volturcius. 14. Many men are implicated in this atrocious (so great) crime.

Ablative with **dignus**, 8. Hortatory Subjunctive, 165. Predicate Nominative and Accusative, 118, 34.

42. Chap. 4. 1. Imprisonment for life; death has no terrors; that no one (lest any one). 2. Silanus is of the opinion (**cēnseō**) that the death (*gen.*) penalty ought to be employed^s against bad citizens. 3. What do you determine about confiscating their goods. 4. Death^s is not a punishment, but a necessity of nature. 5. Cæsar thinks that death is not a punishment, but a rest from labors^s. 6. He thinks that imprisonment for life is the peculiar punishment for (of) infamous crime. 7. Has not death been appointed [as] a rest from toils and miseries? 8. I hope I shall find men (those) for whom death itself has no terrors. 9. Let these men be distributed among the free-towns. 10. Let us ordain that no one shall break their bonds. 11. Let it be ordained besides that (**ut**) their goods be confiscated. 12. Such crimes^s are worthy of imprisonment for life. 13. Let the punishment be worthy of the crime. 14. Are not these men worthy of

death? 15. It is inconsistent with (not of) the dignity of the free-towns to lighten their punishment.

Genitive with **Interest**, 85. Partitive Genitive, 81.

43. Chap. 5. 1. Day before yesterday; I am inclined to think. 2. It is for Cæsar's interest to follow the popular course^s. 3. It is for my (*meā*) interest to second (follow) the proposition of Gaius Cæsar. 4. I saw what was for your interest. 5. Cæsar's opinion^s is a perpetual pledge of his good will. 6. We know that Gracchus was the proposer of the Sempronian law. 7. What is the difference between those who are truly popular and those who wish to be regarded as popular? 8. I am inclined to think that you wish to be popular. 9. I am inclined to think that you did not wish to consult for the public welfare. 10. More^s (of) trouble is in store for Catiline. 11. But there will be less danger for you. 12. No one will hesitate to call the proposer of the Sempronian law popular. 13. The law^s ordains that hereafter no one be consigned to darkness and chains. 14. The law ordained that the property of Lentulus should be confiscated. 15. The informers are worthy of great rewards.

Double Questions, 145. Participle Equivalent to Infinitive Clause, 124. Ablative with **Fruor**, 24.

44. Chap. 6. 1. Methinks I see; to inflict punishment on. 2. In the case of those men; a crime of such enormity. 3. The proposal of Silanus is far (by much) milder than Cæsar's. 4. It is for the interest of the state to punish a crime of such enormity. 5. Is there more^s of cruelty or of mercy in punishing crime? 6. Methinks I see Cethegus revelling in your blood. 7. Methought I saw a slave killing my wife. 8. Should I not seem cruel

and hard-hearted if I did not kill the slave (54)? 9. If Lentulus is on the throne (reigning), then Catiline will come with an army. 10. Can we enjoy life when we see Lentulus on the throne? 11. May we (*dat.*) be permitted^s to enjoy this city in safety. 12. Because Lentulus hoped to be king (reign), for this reason I was the more severe against him. 13. If I do not inflict the severest punishment on him, I shall seem too lenient. 14. In the case of Lentulus, if we put him to death, shall we be regarded as cruel or merciful? 15. He aimed at (*agō ut*) murdering^s one by one the children^s of each one of you. 16. Was Cicero moved by a cruel (cruelty of) disposition or by extraordinary courtesy? 17. You, conscript fathers, have assigned to me the preservation of the state (*cf. attribuit nōs trucidandōs*).

Relative of Characteristic, 149, 154. Accusative of the Gerundive, 92.

45. Chap. 7. 1. Patriotism; since the founding of the city; every preparation has been made. 2. I have assistance^s enough to carry out the measures (those things) that you decide upon. 3. Every preparation and every provision have been made for preserving the common fortunes of all. 4. Not only (*cum*) has my diligence been very great, but (*tum*) the desire of the Roman people to retain imperial sway has been much greater. 5. The forum is the only place in which there is a sufficient guard^s. 6. Shall I mention the senators or the knights? 7. This is the only case in which knights and senators have one and the same feeling. 8. We see all having one and the same feeling. 9. These (*istī*) are the only men who cannot be reckoned in the number of citizens. 10. I

assure you that the whole multitude of free-born citizens is present. 11. May we enjoy the light and the common soil of our country.

Relative of Restriction or Proviso, 152. Sequence of Tenses, 160.

46. Chap. 8. 1. It is worth while. 2. The slaves are contributing to the common safety as much as they can. 3. There is no freedman, provided that he has obtained the privilege (fortune) of citizenship, who does not judge^s this to be his country. 4. There is no one of these men, who loves his country, whom liberty has not aroused to (**ad**) the defence of the city. 5. Is it worth while to tamper with the feelings of the poor^s and ignorant? 6. Their labor^s is maintained by the tranquillity of the state. 7. There is no man so wretched in fortune as (156) not to desire the place of his daily toil to be safe^s. 8. If the slaves contributed as much as they could to the common safety, pray what would the freedmen have done? (*cf. quid . . . futūrum fuit*). 9. If their daily gains are fostered by tranquillity, pray what would happen (167) to them in war? 10. There was no one, provided that he was fond of ease, who did not wish his couch to be safe.

Ablative of Manner, 10.

47. Chap. 9. 1. The lives of all the citizens; the decision must be made. 2. My life has been spared for the safety of the Roman people. 3. See to it (**prōvideō**) that (**ut**) my life may be spared. 4. Let all unite with mind and will, with heart and voice. 5. Citizens of all ranks stretch out their hands to the conscript fathers. 6. May that vestal (of Vesta) fire be eternal^s. 7. This day the decision must be made concerning the temples

and shrines of the gods. 8. Not always have you had leaders mindful of you and forgetful of themselves. 9. This day, for the first time (first^s) you behold all men of all ranks having one and the same feeling. 10. I do not outstrip you in zeal. 11. I have done my duty as consul (consular), with the greatest zeal.

Subjunctive of Concession, **163**. Genitive and Accusative with Verbs of Emotion, **86**.

48. Chap. 10. 1. Before I come back to the vote, I will say a few [words] about the great multitude of enemies^s that I have made. 2. If at some time they threaten me with death (death to me), I shall never repent of what I have done (my deeds). 3. For I have attained such glory as no one else (other) ever [did]. 4. Did Scipio repent of his victories? 5. Does Pompey repent of his exploits? 6. Grant that Scipio compelled Hannibal to depart out of Italy. 7. Grant that two cities are hostile to this republic. 8. Grant that Marius twice freed Italy from siege. 9. Is it a greater [thing] to destroy Carthage and Numantia than to save Rome? 10. I have taken care that you may have a place to come back to (whither you may return). 11. And yet in one respect (place) victories abroad (*adj.*) are better than victories at home (*adj.*). 12. Wherefore I have brought upon myself an eternal^s war with desperate citizens. 13. This harmony between (of) you and the knights can never be broken by any force.

Dative of Possessor, **67**.

49. Chap. 11. 1. At his own peculiar risk, at the risk of himself alone. 2. I have a province, which I disregard. 3. Grant that I have refused a triumph, surely

you will remember my other marks of honor. 4. May you never repent of your decisions. 5. My little son (*dat.*) will have protection enough, if you will remember that he is *my* son. 6. I have preserved the dignity of the state at my own peculiar risk. 7. As long as I live (*fut.*) I will maintain whatever (those things which) you decide upon (*fut. perf.*). 8. By my own efforts (through myself), I will carry into effect your decrees. 9. You have a consul who will obey your decrees. 10. I commend to you the temples and shrines of the gods, which will have protection enough, if you decide^s with care and vigor.



ARCHIAS.

Dative of Purpose, 68.

50. Chap. 1. 1. If anything . . . ; that no one (lest any one). 2. I do not deny that I have some (**aliquid**) talent. 3. I have had some experience in (*cf. in quā . . . versātum*) the practice of oratory (speaking). 4. In my boyhood these studies were not uncongenial to me (my boyhood did not shrink from, etc.). 5. I entered upon the study of oratory with Aulus Licinius for my master (*abl. abs.*). 6. May this voice, moulded by him, be for his safety. 7. Assuredly to him I owe my skill in speaking. 8. My training in the liberal arts ought to be (for) an advantage to him. 9. I, too, have another kind of intellectual endowment (a certain other power^s of mind). 10. Not even he is entirely devoted to this single pursuit. 11. Do you, perchance, wonder that I have said this?

Substantive Clause of Purpose, 141.

51. Chap. 2. 1. To be at variance with. 2. Does it seem strange to you that I am speaking in behalf of a poet? 3. It is not strange that before these highly educated (*superl.*) men I should adopt a new method of pleading (*dicō*). 4. This method of pleading will not be disagreeable to the prætor [who is], a very learned man. 5. I know that it is at variance with the custom^s of the courts. 6. I beg^s of you to grant me this indulgence. 7. I beg of you to speak freely about the pursuit of literature. 8. If Licinius is a citizen, he ought^s to be enrolled. 9. If he was not a citizen, he ought to have been enrolled. 10. Since he is a citizen, he ought not to be excluded from the list of citizens. 11. I shall cause you to think that he has been enrolled.

Locative Case, 116. Ablative of Place, 14.

52. Chap. 3. 1. As soon as; from boyhood; in boyhood. 2. In the towns and at Rome; to be highly honored (affected with great honor). 3. As soon as Archias devoted himself to writing, he quickly excelled^s all others^s. 4. In boyhood we devote ourselves to the study of composition (writing). 5. Archias had the good fortune (it happened to A.) to be born at Antioch, a once populous city. 6. At Tarentum he was presented with many rewards. 7. Greek arts were much (*multum*) cultivated in Italy. 8. When he was in Rome, a city full of learned men, Marius and Catulus were consuls. 9. Lucullus not only received him into his home [when he was] a youth, but also was intimate with [him in] his old age. 10. He caused (*perficiō*) the Luculli to think that he was worthy of their acquaintance.

Ablative of Quality, 18. Accusative of Limit, 30.

53. Chap. 4. 1. After a long interval; within sixty days; before citizenship was given. 2. When he had withdrawn from Sicily, he came into Italy. 3. Heraclea was a city [possessed] of the most favorable privileges. 4. Lucullus is [a man] of great authority. 5. Was he not [a person] of the greatest honesty? 6. Archias had come to Heraclea with Lucullus. 7. Since he declared his intention to the prætor within sixty days, he was enrolled. 8. When he departed from Heraclea, he came to Rome. 9. Lucullus knew that he was enrolled. 10. Many years before the burning^s of the registry at Heraclea he had been enrolled at Rome. 11. Or do you not demand^s the records? 12. Nay, rather you ask^s for nothing but the records.

Ablative of Cause, 5.

54. Chap. 5. 1. Why is it that? — what reason is there why? 2. To conduct one's self as a citizen; up to that time. 3. All confidence in the records was destroyed. 4. Gabinius was not troubled at the erasure of names. 5. But Metellus was troubled at the erasure of a single name. 6. He was so careful (of such diligence) that he went to the prætor and said that he had found^s one erasure. 7. Many ordinary men are possessed of no skill, [while] stage-performers enjoy the highest reputation for genius. 8. Why is it that the Neapolitans should bestow citizenship on ordinary men? 9. I have always wished to be a Neapolitan. 10. Since up to that time he had conducted himself as a citizen, he was rated according to our laws. 11. Such being the case, what reason is there why he should hesitate to make a will?

Conditional Sentences, **53, 54, 55.** Deliberative Subjunctive, **164.**

55. Chap. 6. 1. I am ashamed; he is ashamed. 2. Oratorical ability, power of oratory; of slight account. 3. I ask^a of you why you are so charmed with Aulus Licinius. 4. Could our minds bear such a strain, if we did not relieve them? 5. If we did not cultivate our minds, we could not be supplied with material for speaking (what we may speak could not be supplied to us). 6. Why should you be ashamed, if you have devoted yourself to these studies? 7. I should be ashamed, if I had not devoted myself to them. 8. I assign as much (of) time to managing my own affairs as you [do] to early banquets (*put rel. clause first*). 9. Who would justly blame you, if you should assign some (**aliquid**) time to ball-playing? 10. If I had not tried to secure glory and honor, I should not have devoted myself to literature. 11. Why should I be ashamed, if I have exposed myself to so many struggles for your welfare? 12. If antiquity had not been full of examples, we should not have had so many portraitures of excellent men^a.

Ablative of Means or Instrument, **11.**

56. Chap. 7. 1. In my opinion; prosperity; adversity. 2. There have been famous men who were not trained in literature. 3. What I am to assert about those men may be relied upon (is certain). 4. We extol with praises those men whose valiant deeds (*plur. of virtūs*) have been the theme of history (handed down to letters). 5. Natural ability (nature) without learning has often been effectual in gaining glory (for glory). 6. Some one may ask (**167**): "What? Does learning without natural ability amount to much (avail much, **multum**)?" 7. Do

we seek pleasure alone from these pursuits? 8. If they did not nurture our youth, nevertheless they would, in my opinion, charm our old age.

Cum-Concessive, 61. Deliberative Subjunctive, 164.

57. Chap. 8. 1. On the spur of the moment; to contend with one another. 2. You ought to admire the skill and grace of Roscius, even though you are a rustic. 3. Who of you is so rude as not to (that he does not) admire skill and grace in others? 4. It seems as if he ought not to die at all (he seems, etc.). 5. But Roscius could not recite (*dicō*) a great number of verses on the spur of the moment. 6. We are told by (receive from) learned men that poets are inspired by an enthusiasm [that is] almost divine. 7. Shall we not love^s a man of such excellent skill and grace? 8. Shall I not defend Archias in every way? 9. Shall we not admire this sacred name of poet? 10. Does he not seem to be commended to us by some endowment of the gods themselves? 11. Are not you, gentlemen of the jury, moved by the voice of poets? 12. Though we admired Roscius, we love Archias. 13. Though I have spoken in this new way, nevertheless you have attended to me diligently.

Accusative with Infinitive, 31. Tenses of the Infinitive, 113.

58. Chap. 9. 1. By land and sea; the sinking of the fleet; to like to hear. 2. Whose voice do you like best to hear? 3. Archias has devoted all his talent to celebrating the glory of the Roman people. 4. When a young man, he touched upon the Cimbric campaign (*rēs*) of Gaius Marius. 5. Though Marius was rather rough (*comp.*) for these pursuits, still he was glad to

hear the Cimbric campaign celebrated in verse (*plur.*). 6. They say^s that Marius said^s he was very glad to hear the voice of a poet celebrating his fame. 7. Shall we not love a man (him) by whose genius our deeds (those things which we have done) are celebrated? 8. Themistocles said that he liked to hear the voice of a poet. 9. The sinking of the fleet off Tenedos was celebrated by the genius of Archias. 10. Our fame is celebrated by those through whose genius the victories of our generals are extolled (*put the rel. clause first*).

Relative of Cause or Reason, 51. Adjectives as Nouns, 41.

59. Chap. 10. 1. You are greatly mistaken if you think Greek (*plur. neut.*) is read less (*adv.*) than Latin. 2. Our glory and fame have extended as far as (to the same place whither) our arms have reached. 3. This our Archias writes of our achievements in Greek verse (*plur.*). 4. Fortunate are the Roman people in having (who have) found Archias as the herald of their fame. 5. O fortunate Alexander to have stood by the tomb of Achilles! 6. O fortunate young men to be able to read Latin! 7. When Pompey presented Theophanes with citizenship, the soldiers approved. 8. And so^s, I suppose, if Archias had not been presented with citizenship by Lucullus, he could not have obtained (received) it from Sulla. 9. I will bestow a reward upon you, but on condition that you write nothing hereafter. 10. The genius and merit of Archias are worthy (*neut. plur., 38*) of the greatest reward.

Accusative of Duration, 29.

60. Chap. 11. 1. All the best men, — every good man. 2. In that city in which. 3. All the best men are influ-

enced by a desire for celebrity. 4. I confess^s that I myself have for many years (*annus*) been influenced by a love of praise. 5. We know that Fulvius was influenced by a desire for fame, because he (who) consecrated to the Muses the spoils of Mars. 6. My own love of glory is perhaps too ardent; but yet it is an honorable [one]. 7. But I have never written treatises on the contempt of glory. 8. In a city in which poets are honored by generals, we ought^s not to be averse to (shrink from) the welfare of poets. 9. Night and day the minds of all the best men are spurred by incentives to glory. 10. If glory be withdrawn (*abl. abs.*), what other thing is there for us to desire (which we may desire)?

Genitive of Quality, 78. Ablative of Quality, 18.

61. Chap. 12. 1. Narrow-minded, mean-spirited. 2. To take in good part; I am sure. 3. Are we so narrow-minded as to (who) think that everything is to die with us? 4. Do you not prefer to leave^s a representation of your mind^s rather than of your body? 5. You are not so mean-spirited as to wish to leave no representation of your virtues. 6. Wherefore, gentlemen of the jury, we beg^s of you to preserve a man of such talent that he is sought after by the most distinguished men. 7. You ought to preserve one (him who is) of that class [of men] that are always considered sacred. 8. Wise men think that what we do in life is present to our consciousness after death. 9. I am sure that you will take in good part what I have said. 10. He who holds the court will take in good part what I have said that is foreign to court usage.

FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION.

CATILINE I.

62. Chaps. 1-3. 1. Pray how long, Catiline, shall you abuse our patience? Your plans^s ¹are all exposed. The consuls hold your whole conspiracy ²in their grasp. They know^s ³what plans you adopt. The senate, too⁴, knows all these things, and yet you are alive. Alive? Nay more, you have come into the senate, plotting our destruction, and eager to lay waste the whole earth with fire^s and slaughter.

2. Once a mischievous citizen was slain^s by the Pontifex Maximus, but we, consuls, who have a decree^s of the senate against you, allow^s you to live. ⁵For twenty days already the decree ⁶has been shut up in the records, ⁷like a sword buried in its sheath, ⁸and yet you do not abandon^s your ⁹audacious schemes.

3. I desire ¹⁰to be merciful, but I do condemn myself ¹¹for^s inactivity and negligence. You ought¹² ¹³to have been put to death long ago; but I wish you to live

62. NOTE.—Do not forget to give careful attention to the always important matters of Order and Emphasis. See 74, 122.

¹ *Lie open.* — ² *Bound fast.* — ³ *What (of) plan;* ind. quest. — ⁴ **Quoque.** — ⁵ *Now the twentieth day.* — ⁶ Pres. tense, 95. — ⁷ *As if buried.* — ⁸ And . . . not = **neque.** — ⁹ Use the abstract word “audacity.” — ¹⁰ Observe Cicero’s use of the acc. w. inf. where we might have the complementary inf. w. nom., **esse clēmēns.** — ¹¹ See 87. — ¹² Perf. of **oportet.** — ¹³ Pres. inf.

as long as there is¹⁴ any^s one¹⁵ who ventures to defend you.

4. But, believe me, many men are watching you,¹⁶ although you know it not, and not even a private house can keep within its walls^s the voice of your conspiracy. You are beset on every hand. You can do nothing¹⁷ that I do not immediately^s find out.

63. Chaps. 4-6. 1. Did you not come into Læca's house¹ night before last? Are there not here in the senate certain [men] who were with you? O immortal gods,² where in the world are we? Here, here, in this most venerable council^s in³ the world, are [some]⁴ who are⁵ partners in your folly and wickedness.

2. Two Roman knights promised⁶ to kill^s me that very night, but I discovered^s the⁷ treacherous design, and when they came in the morning⁸ to greet me, I shut them out. ⁹Such being the case, Catiline, depart from the city. I shall be relieved of great fear, provided that we¹⁰ get rid of this dreadful curse of the republic.

3. Why have I not yet ordered Catiline to be put to death? Why has not the consul¹¹ ordered the public enemy¹¹ to go into exile? Why has not Catiline of his own accord gone from a city where¹² there is no man⁴ who does not fear and¹³ hate him?

4. Disgrace and dishonor cling to¹⁴ his reputation. He has heaped crime upon¹⁵ crime. He has attempted^s to

62. ¹⁴ *Shall be.* — ¹⁵ Rel. of char., 149. — ¹⁶ *Not knowing*; part. expressing concession. — ¹⁷ Cf. n. 15.

63. ¹ *On the former night.* — ² Follow the text. — ³ *Of.* — ⁴ Rel. of char. — ⁵ *Sharers of.* — ⁶ See 114. — ⁷ *Insidiae.* — ⁸ Supine, 169. — ⁹ *Since which things are so.* — ¹⁰ *Escape*; subj. of proviso w. *dum modo*, 73. — ¹¹ Contrasted words are often put close together. — ¹² *Ubi.* — *which.* — ¹³ Repeat *nēmō quī* without conj. — ¹⁴ *In.* — ¹⁵ *By.*

put to death many leading men of the state, and to overwhelm the city with fire^a and slaughter.

64. Chaps. 7–9. 1. Pray how¹ can you bear it that² no one out of this great³ throng saluted you when you came into the senate? Do you wait for the reproach of words⁴ when you are overwhelmed by the stern judgment of silence? ⁵If my acquaintances did not greet me, I should prefer to avoid their sight and presence.

2. You do not reverence the authority of your country, which is the common parent of us all. For a long^a time you ⁶have thought^a of nothing but her death. ⁷It seems that no design can be formed against her without you. This⁸ must not be borne.

3. Ought⁹ you not then to go away into exile? Do you demand^a a decree^a of the senate? I shall not ¹⁰put the question to the senate, and yet I will ¹¹let you know what the senate thinks^a of you. Begone from the city, Catiline. Do you not see that the senate is silent? ¹²Silence gives consent.

4. ⁵If I had ordered that sterling man, Marcus Marcellus, to go into exile, the senate would with ¹³perfect justice have laid ¹⁴violent hands upon me. ¹⁵O that you would go into exile! O that you would separate yourself from good citizens!

65. Chaps. 10–13. 1. There are some in this body, conscript fathers, who think^a that I should be acting

64. ¹ *With what mind*, 10. — ² *Quod*; put this clause first. — ³ *So great*. — ⁴ *Voice*. — ⁵ Condition, third form, 55. — ⁶ *Pres. ind.* — ⁷ *No design seems to be able*, etc., 129. — ⁸ *Which*. — ⁹ *Dēbeō*. — ¹⁰ *Referō*. — ¹¹ *Make that you know*. — ¹² *While they are silent, they approve*. — ¹³ *est right*. — ¹⁴ *Force and hands*. — ¹⁵ *Cf. utinam . . . duint*, and see 166.

cruelly and tyrannically, ¹if I should punish^s Catiline with death^s. They do ²not even believe that a conspiracy has been formed. But my country seems to condemn me for³ inactivity, ⁴in that I ⁵allow that gladiator to live a single hour.

2. ⁶Methinks she is even now reproaching me ⁷for neglecting the safety of the citizens. If I should permit^s Catiline to go from the city to the camp of Manlius, as⁸ he purposes, no one will be so^s stupid ⁹as not to admit^s that he is no longer a citizen.

3. If he takes with him his whole band of ruined and desperate men, the root and seed of all evils will be stamped out and destroyed. ¹⁰For a long time the city has been involved in these dangers, but ¹¹in some way or other ¹²all evils have come to maturity in the time of my consulship.

4. Bad men are plotting against the consul in his own house, besieging^s the Senate-house with swords [in their hands, and] preparing torches ¹³to burn^s the city. ¹⁴If they all depart, and follow Catiline ¹⁵out of the city, you will see the whole conspiracy ¹⁶laid open, and not only that, but also crushed forever.

65. ¹ Here the mood and tense are the same as in *dir. disc.*, 54, 56. — ² *Nē . . . quidem.* — ³ *Of.* — ⁴ *Quod.* Be ready to give a reason for the mood of the verb in this clause; see 49. — ⁵ *Give . . . the use of one hour for living.* — ⁶ *She seems to me to reproach, 129.* — ⁷ *Because I neglect;* see note 4. — ⁸ *Whither.* — ⁹ Relative clause of result, 156. — ¹⁰ See 95. — ¹¹ *I know not in what way.* — ¹² Cf. *omnium scelerum . . . mātūritās . . . ērūpit.* — ¹³ *Ad w. gerundive.* — ¹⁴ What time is referred to in this conditional sentence? — ¹⁵ See 15. — ¹⁶ *Not only laid open but also crushed.*

CATILINE II.

66. Chaps. 1-5. 1. At last, fellow-citizens, he who has long been plotting the ruin^s of the state within the very walls^s of the city, Lucius Catiline, that vile corrupter of youth, whom all good [citizens] fear,^s has been driven out of the city, which seems to me to rejoice and exult that² it has³ rid itself of so^s deadly a foe.

2. If there be any^s one of you⁴ who asks^s why I allowed^s him to depart, and did not rather arrest [him] and even put [him] to death, remember that there are many who do not believe that there is a conspiracy. ⁵My desire was to force⁶ him from secret plots to open marauding. ⁷This object I have now attained.

3. When he found^s that I knew^s all his plans, he took fright and ran away. Now, at last, there can be no one^s who does not believe what I reported, no one⁹ to defend Catiline. I ¹⁰could wish indeed that all his boon-companions had followed him.

4. But these remain. ¹¹Fortunate will be the republic, glorious the renown of my consulship, if only the whole gang follow¹² their leader out of the city. ¹³Then there would be no one¹⁴ for us to fear^s, for such¹⁵ an army of profligates as¹⁵ Catiline has gathered together is not to be feared.

66. ¹See 95. — ²Quod; see Ex. 65, n. 4. — ³Cast up. — ⁴Vestrūm, 121. — ⁵I wished. — ⁶Cōniciō. — ⁷Which [thing]. — ⁸Cf. quī quae ego dēferrem nōn crēderent in chap. ii., and note change of tense. — ⁹Rel. clause of characteristic; so also the preceding clause. — ¹⁰Potential subj., 167. — ¹¹Use the exclamatory phrase, 28. — ¹²Fut. perf. ¹³A condition is implied in the word "then," which = "if that were so," 57. — ¹⁴Whom we should fear. — ¹⁵Tantus . . . quantus.

67. **Chaps. 6-9.** 1. But there are some who ask ¹whether I drove Catiline into exile or not. How² can it be said that I drove him into exile, when³ all the senators know⁴ that he has entered upon war, that he has sent to the camp ⁴of Manlius arms and military standards, and even his silver eagle? [Those] who ⁵make this assertion, who believe that he is an innocent man, and I a most cruel tyrant, that banish men by threats and force, are attempting to raise⁶ a storm of odium against me.

2. ⁷But what would these same men, who assert that Catiline has gone into exile at⁸ Massilia, say if he should turn his course⁹ from flight and exile to a career of crime⁹ and war? What if he should within three days command an army of the enemy? What if he should prefer to be killed ⁹in partisan warfare rather¹⁰ than live an exile?

3. It seems ¹¹necessary⁹ for me to speak now about the classes of men from which the forces of Catiline are procured. First⁸, there are those rich men who are ¹²deeply in debt, and who expect from Catiline a new deal, by which their large properties may be saved⁹. Another class is composed of men who expect to gain power⁹ ¹³by the very confusion of the state. Then there are certain of Sulla's colonists who have fallen deeply in debt themselves, and are forcing some needy countrymen into an expectation of [a renewal of] the old plunderings.

67. ¹ Cf. *fuisset necne*, and observe that "whether" is not there expressed. — ² *Quō modō*. — ³ *Cum*-causal, 50. — ⁴ Adj. — ⁵ *Say this*. — ⁶ *Excitō*. — ⁷ Cf. the sentence (chap. vii.) *sed cum sint hominēs . . . dicerent*, and note change in form of the condition. — ⁸ *To*. — ⁹ Use the part. — ¹⁰ Expressed in the word for "prefer." — ¹¹ *That it must be spoken by me*; begin the sentence with *nunc dē*, etc. — ¹² *In great debt*. — ¹³ *The state itself being confused*.

68. Chaps. 10-13. 1. Since this is so⁸, fellow-citizens, I have so managed affairs that, even if Catiline should make raids upon the colonies and free-towns, they can easily be defended. Finally, I cannot forget that those whom Catiline has left⁹ in the city are our enemies, ¹and that they should be warned again and again ²not to ³make any stir in the city.

2. To these men I say, “Be assured that the consuls are vigilant, that they have provided a sufficient guard⁴ for the city, [and] that the citizens have been warned to defend their homes with sentinels and guards. If you make the slightest attempt against your country, I shall immediately discover it.”

3. We are supplied with everything⁵ that⁶ Catiline lacks⁷. On one side are your consuls and generals, on the other, that worn-out and wounded gladiator; on one side the flower and strength⁸ of all Italy, on the other, a gang of shameless and indecent profligates; on this side the cities of your colonists, on that, the wooded heights of Catiline.

4. In a contest of this kind, who can doubt that⁷ the immortal gods will defend ⁸in person this fair city against the impious attacks of unprincipled men? Do you,⁹ then, fellow-citizens, enter upon this war, relying not on human devices,¹⁰ but on the gods themselves. ¹¹Under my guidance no good man shall perish, but all villany shall be crushed.

68. ¹Who should, etc., second periph. conj. — ²Neg. purpose, 139. — ³Move themselves. — ⁴Fut. imper. of *sciō*. — ⁵All things. — ⁶Abl., 16. — ⁷Quin w. pres. subj., 158. — ⁸Præsēns. — ⁹To be expressed because emphatic. — ¹⁰Abl., 9. — ¹¹Do not try to think of a word for “under”; translate the thought.

CATILINE III.

69. **Chaps. 1-5.** 1. Fellow-citizens,¹ the republic is safe. Your wives, your children^s, and your homes^s have, through my efforts, been rescued² from fire^s and sword, and restored² to you. And, because³ I know^s that you are waiting⁴ to learn^s what has taken place since Catiline⁶ a few days ago burst out of the city, I will lay before you the whole matter.

2. The leaders who remained in the city⁷ tried to tamper with the ambassadors from Gaul, and, as⁸ they were about to return to Gaul, gave them a letter of⁹ instructions for Catiline.

3. When¹⁰ I found^s out that they were¹¹ laying this plot, I saw that the opportunity was offered me¹² of getting such a grasp of the whole conspiracy that both you and the senate might clearly comprehend¹³ it. Therefore the Allobroges and Volturcius were arrested and brought back to the city.

4. Although¹⁴ it was the opinion of many distinguished men¹⁵ that I should open the letters before submitting¹⁶ them to the senate, I kept the seals unbroken. After Volturcius had disclosed^s what¹⁷ he knew,¹⁸ and the Gauls had given their evidence, the documents were brought forward.

69. ¹ Usual position of the vocative? — ² For agreement of the part., see 38. — ³ Quoniam, 49. — ⁴ Not inf. — ⁵ Ind. quest. — ⁶ See 175. — ⁷ Imperfect, 99. — ⁸ When. — ⁹ And. — ¹⁰ Ut. — ¹¹ Do not try to think of a word for "laying"; see 26. — ¹² That I might so^s grasp. — ¹³ For agreement of the verb, see 45. — ¹⁴ It pleased. — ¹⁵ Acc. w. inf. — ¹⁶ Dēferō; informal ind. disc., 107. — ¹⁷ Those [things] which. — ¹⁸ Subj. by attraction, 162.

5. Lentulus, Cethegus, Statilius, [each] identified his hand and seal. The letters were read. Lentulus, ¹⁹on being asked^s by the Gauls whether he had ²⁰not said something to²¹ them about firing the city, though at first^s he denied his guilt, a while afterwards confessed^s it.

70. Chaps. 6-8. 1. After the evidence had all been set forth, the senate ¹passed a decree against nine of² the conspirators, that they should be ³put under guard, and, ⁴because Lentulus was a prætor, it was decided^s that he should first^s resign his office, so that there might be no ⁵scruples to prevent his being punished^s.

2. ⁶A vote of thanks^s to me was passed, because I had driven Catiline from the city. And^s also the senate decreed a thanksgiving to the immortal gods in my name, because I had not only managed the ⁷affairs of state successfully, but had even saved the state.

3. Now there is ⁸no longer anything ⁹for us to fear. As long as Catiline was in the city, ¹⁰we had everything to fear; for he was so^s active, so bold, so crafty, so alert in villany, that we could have met and thwarted all his designs [only] with the greatest difficulty.

4. And yet, fellow-citizens, ¹¹it almost seems as if the immortal gods themselves had managed all these important affairs by their own will and power^s. For, surely, ¹²it does not belong to human wisdom to have foreseen all that has happened^s in our consulship.

69. ¹⁹ Use part.—²⁰ *Said (loquor) nothing.*—²¹ *With.*

70. ¹ *Cēnseō.*—² *Ex.*—³ *Delivered into custody.*—⁴ Order: *it was decided that (ut) Lentulus, because he, etc.*—⁵ Cf. *religiō . . . quō minus*, and see 140.—⁶ Cf. *grātiaē . . . aguntur.*—⁷ *Rēs publicā*; in this clause imitate *bene gestā . . . cōnservātā rē publicā.*—⁸ *Nihil iam.*—⁹ Rel. clause.—¹⁰ *All [things] were to be feared by us.*—¹¹ *The gods seem, etc., 129.*—¹² *It is not of, 78.*

71. Chaps. 9–12. 1. ¹Under the guidance of the immortal gods, I² resisted those men who attempted³ to set fire to the temples and shrines, and brought to light everything that they had planned against your safety. The gods, then, are worthy of all³ honor ⁴for saving the city from slaughter and fire and bloodshed.

2. ⁵If I should say that I had done these things alone, without the help⁶ of the gods, I should be ⁶beside myself. ⁷Does it not seem to have happened⁸ providentially that Lentulus was so foolish⁸ as to intrust the letters to Gauls, who, though they ⁹might have kept silent, nevertheless, of their own accord, offered us the proofs of Catiline's guilt⁹?

3. In return for my important¹⁰ services, fellow-citizens, I ask⁹ for no mute memorial of praise, but that my deeds may be cherished in your memories.¹¹ But⁹ since I must live with those¹² I have subdued, I hope that the protection ¹³afforded by good citizens will be secured to me forever.

4. ¹⁴There is no need⁹ of saying that there is such¹⁵ dignity ¹⁶in the republic that it will always defend me, who have voluntarily offered¹⁷ myself to all [sorts of] dangers for your safety, from the assaults¹¹ of intestine foes.

71. ¹ See Ex. 68, n. 11. — ² To be expressed. Cicero had no hesitation in emphasizing the first personal pronoun. — ³ *Greatest*. — ⁴ Rel. clause; expressing what idea? — ⁵ Begin *Quæ ego si*. — ⁶ *Taken in mind*. — ⁷ Put the main clause last; begin with "That Lentulus," etc., which is a subst. clause of result, 157. — ⁸ Form adj. from adv. *dēmenter*. — ⁹ *Were able to keep silent*. — ¹⁰ *So great*. — ¹¹ Sing. — ¹² Supply the rel. *whom*. — ¹³ *In*. — ¹⁴ *It need not to be said*. — ¹⁵ *That*. — ¹⁶ Put the phrase "in the republic" between "that" and "dignity." — ¹⁷ Have a good reason for the mood by which you translate this verb.

CATILINE IV.

72. Chaps. 1-4. 1. Conscript fathers, you know that ¹I am never free from the danger of death either in the Forum or in the Senate-house, or ²in my own home, or even in this seat of honor; but yet, whatever fate awaits³ me, I shall endure it with equanimity,⁴ provided that by my efforts safety is secured to you and to the Roman people.

2. For why should I not rejoice to have rescued you, your wives, and your children from slaughter, and the Vestal virgins from bitter outrage, even if the immortal gods should will that⁵ I am to suffer⁶ all pains and hardships, and even death itself?

3. Yesterday I asked ⁶for your judgment about the fact, and ⁷for your decision about the penalty. To-day, before night, we must decide⁸ what ⁸is to be done about the accused. For this mischief, which has spread further ⁹than is generally supposed, can by no means be checked by ¹⁰forbearance and procrastination.

4. ¹¹It is the opinion of Decimus Silanus that the conspirators should be punished⁸ with death, while¹² Gaius Cæsar holds¹³ that death was not appointed by the gods as¹⁴ a punishment, but as a rest from¹⁵ toil and misery; and therefore he recommends¹⁶ confiscation of property and imprisonment ¹⁷for life.

72. ¹ Order: *neither . . . nor etc., am I ever free.* — ² Not in w. abl. — ³ Pass. of *prōpōnō*. — ⁴ Two words. — ⁵ Ut. — ⁶ *What you thought.* — ⁷ *What you decided.* — ⁸ Pass. periph. conj. — ⁹ *Than opinion.* — ¹⁰ Use gerunds, *93*. — ¹¹ *Silanus decides, cēnseō* foll. by acc. w. inf. — ¹² *Autem.* — ¹³ *Intellegō*. — ¹⁴ *For the sake^s of.* — ¹⁵ *Of.* — ¹⁶ *Orders.* — ¹⁷ *Sempiternus.*

73. Chaps. 5-7. 1. The proposal of Gaius Cæsar is 'that of one [who is] consulting for the safety of the people, and is, as it were, a hostage for² his perpetual good-will towards the state. No one can doubt³ what he thinks about the whole case who voted a reward⁴ to the informer and thanks to the investigator; and who, [though] a very mild and gentle person, consigns Lentulus to perpetual darkness and chains.

2. Wherefore, if you adopt the proposal of Silanus, I shall not fear⁵ the charge of cruelty, for what cruelty can there be 'in punishing with death a man who is in no sense⁶ a citizen, but is an enemy of the republic? The proposer of the Sempronian law⁷ himself was put to death by command of the people.

3. When I see⁸ 'in my mind's eye the city falling in ruin, the 'wretched heaps of unburied citizens, and Cethegus revelling in your blood, I cannot think⁹ about mercy and compassion towards the guilty [wretches] who have wished to murder¹⁰ us, and to set up the race of the Allobroges on the ruins¹¹ of the city.

4. And¹² now, lest some one may¹³ be apprehensive 'that there is not help¹⁴ enough 'to carry out¹⁵ the measures that you 'decide upon to-day, [I will say that] every preparation has been made. The Roman people¹⁶ have aimed to give me all the assistance¹⁷ I want.

73. ¹ *Of him (ille).* — ² *Of.* — ³ For the order, cf. the sentence beginning *iam hōc*, chap. v. — ⁴ *In w. gerundive.* — ⁵ *Modus.* — ⁶ *In mind.* — ⁷ Follow the text: *wretched and unburied heaps.* — ⁸ *Cōgitō.* — ⁹ *Traces.* — ¹⁰ *Vereor.* — ¹¹ "That not" after a verb of fearing = ? See 142. — ¹² *Ad w. gerundive.* — ¹³ *Those [things].* — ¹⁴ *Not pres.* — ¹⁵ *Agō ut.* — ¹⁶ *Supply "which."* — ¹⁷ *Why subjunctive?*

74. Chaps. 8–11. 1. It is ¹worth while to recognize the zeal² of all citizens of all ranks. But why should I mention them? For their own interests³ stimulate them to defend their country. Even the slaves, ⁴if only they are in a tolerable condition of servitude, contribute all⁵ they can to the safety and tranquillity of the state.

2. And the poor^s and ignorant, ⁶although Lentulus ⁷tried to tamper with them, almost outstrip you in patriotism.⁸ Indeed, those who ⁹are dependent on their daily^s gains¹⁰ in the shops, — since, ¹¹when the shops are closed their gains are diminished, — have no desire to follow the fortunes of men who are trying to overthrow the very foundations of the state.

3. Such being the case, conscript fathers, see to it ¹²that you ¹³do not fail^s in your duty to those whose help^s has never failed you. Our common country is beset by the torches and weapons of an impious conspiracy, and ¹⁴upon you rests the decision whether ¹⁵all that we see about us shall stand, or the whole republic be destroyed.

4. ¹⁶I may lose my life, for I have undertaken eternal^s war against the enemies of the republic; but the memory of my deeds will remain. I have ever been mindful of you and forgetful of myself; and I shall not hesitate to execute your decrees, even if the violence of wicked men shall threaten^s ¹⁷me with death.

74. ¹ *The price of labor.* — ² *Acts of zeal*, plur. of *studium*. — ³ *Rēs*. — ⁴ *Who are in*; rel. clause of proviso, 152. — ⁵ *As much as*. — ⁶ Rel. clause of concession, 150. — ⁷ Imp. subj. — ⁸ *Love of country*. — ⁹ *Are not sustained by*. — ¹⁰ Sing. — ¹¹ Abl. abs. — ¹² Neg. purpose. — ¹³ *Are not wanting to*. — ¹⁴ *You must decide*; impers. — ¹⁵ *All these things*, not *omnia haec*. — ¹⁶ *Grant that I lose*; cf. *sit Scīpiō clārus*, and see 163. — ¹⁷ *Death to me*.

ARCHIAS.

75. **Chaps. 1-5.** 1. Aulus Licinius Archias was born ¹of a noble^a family at Antioch, a city² once populous and wealthy, and abounding in men ³of the highest learning. ⁴In boyhood he was trained in polite learning, and afterwards, ⁵having devoted himself to writing, he was thought worthy of the acquaintance and hospitality of many persons both in Italy and Greece.

2. When he had come to Rome, ⁶while still a young man, he ⁷became acquainted with many distinguished^a men. Not only ⁸was his acquaintance cultivated by those who could furnish him with the noblest⁹ subjects ¹⁰for his pen, but also by those who were eager to listen to him.

3. Although he had had a domicile in Rome for many years, and afterwards had been enrolled as a citizen at Heraclea, a city¹¹ having the most favorable privileges and treaty-rights, he was accused by a certain¹² Grattius, under the Papian Law, ¹³on the ground that he was not a Roman citizen.

4. Cicero pleaded the cause of his friend before the court, and easily proved by the evidence of Lucullus and of the Heracleian deputies that Archias was a Roman citizen under the law of Silvanus and Carbo. A large part of his oration is devoted¹⁴ to celebrating the praises of literature.

75. ¹ Abl. of origin, 20. — ² Abl. in app. w. the loc. Antiochiæ. — ³ Most learned. — ⁴ [As a] boy. — ⁵ A cum-clause. — ⁶ Even then. — ⁷ Cōgnōscō. — ⁸ Change to the act. — ⁹ Greatest. — ¹⁰ Not literal. — ¹¹ Cf. n. 2. — ¹² Quīdam. — ¹³ Quod. — ¹⁴ Dēdō.

76. Chaps. 6-9. 1. Some one ¹may ask why I am so greatly charmed with these studies. Because² they are ³adapted to all times, all ages, and all places; because they relieve my mind [when it is] weary with the din and strife ⁴of the Forum; because by means of them this ⁵oratorical ability ⁶is improved; and because I am able ⁷to study the portrayals of eminent men, which authors have left us in their books. Setting these⁸ examples before me, I can educate my mind⁹ and judgment by the very contemplation of excellent men.

2. Do you ask whether⁹ all our great commanders have been trained in literature? Not all; for there have been men of such pre-eminent ¹⁰natural ability that, even without [the aid of] learning, they ¹¹have shown themselves not only brave and wise, but well-balanced and dignified. But it is, nevertheless, certain that learning ¹²is of great assistance ¹³in the cultivation of character.¹⁴

3. ¹⁵Let the men of Colophon claim⁸ Homer for their own; this Archias ¹⁶belongs to us, ¹⁷by his own desire and by our laws. His voice we ¹⁸like to hear, because he celebrates¹⁹ the name and fame of the Roman people. Grant that our own Ennius was¹⁵ dear to the elder Africanus; is not Archias ²⁰dearly loved by that distinguished general, Lucius Lucullus, who opened Pontus to the Roman people and routed the innumerable forces of the Armenians?

76. ¹ Potential subj., 167. — ² Quia, 49. — ³ Of; what gen.? — ⁴ Adj. — ⁵ Express by two nouns. — ⁶ Crēscō. — ⁷ Intueor. — ⁸ Which; put first. — ⁹ Use -ne. — ¹⁰ Nātūrā. — ¹¹ Exstō. — ¹² Aids much. — ¹³ Not the abl. — ¹⁴ Virtūs. — ¹⁵ Cf. sit . . . sānctum . . . nōmen. — ¹⁶ Is ours. — ¹⁷ Abl. "in accordance with," 3. — ¹⁸ Gladly hear. — ¹⁹ Is there any reason for putting this verb in the subj.? — ²⁰ Exceedingly.

77. Chaps. 10–12. 1. Alexander the Great had with him many historians of his exploits, for he knew that, ¹if he had no one ²to be the herald of his valor, his name ³would be buried in the same tomb that ⁴should cover his body. And so our own “Magnus” awarded a prize to the historian of his achievements, Theophanes of Mytilene.

2. Sulla bestowed citizenship upon many Spaniards; and would he have rejected Archias, ⁵if he had sought [his favor]? He who was so ⁶eager ⁷to have his actions celebrated in verse that he lent an ear to the poor poets of Cordova would not, I suppose, have sought ⁸for the genius of Archias.

3. It must be admitted ⁹that even ⁹those philosophers who write treatises ¹⁰on the contempt of glory are themselves, ⁹nevertheless, influenced by the love of praise; and, in fact, ¹¹the best men are most attracted by glory. I do not hesitate to confess ⁹to you that I myself ⁹desire no other reward ⁹for my toils and dangers in your behalf than the eternal ⁹heralding of my virtues.

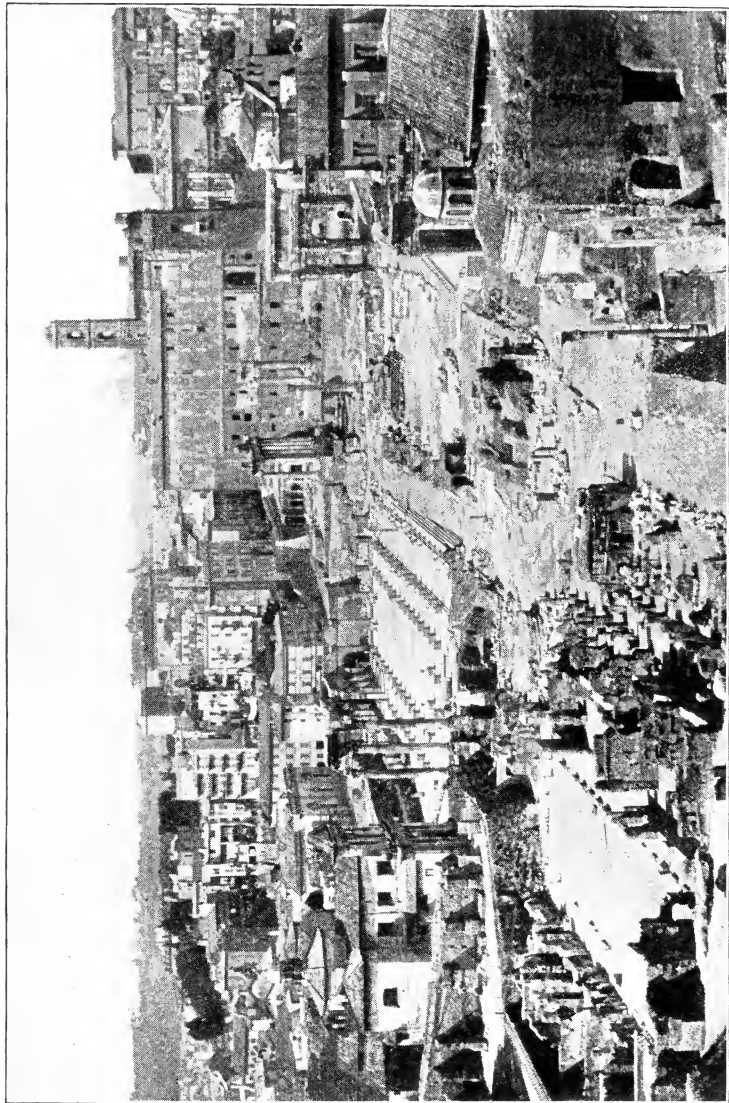
4. Wherefore, since Archias has ¹²done honor in his verse to the achievements of the Roman people, and since he is ¹³possessed of such a genius that he is courted by our most distinguished ⁹men, I entreat ¹⁴you, gentlemen of the jury, ²to receive him under your protection, so that he may seem to be relieved by your humanity rather than injured by your severity.

77. ¹If no one = *unless some one*. — ²Not inf. — ³Use *fore ut* w. subj., 75. — ⁴In ind. disc. — ⁵Use part. or clause w. *si*. — ⁶*Usque eō*. — ⁷[*It*] to be written about his deeds. — ⁸The conclusion of a conditional sentence; what is the condition? — ⁹*Ipse*. — ¹⁰*Dē* w. gerundive. — ¹¹*Optimus quisque*. — ¹²*Honored*. — ¹³Abl. of quality. — ¹⁴*Petō ē*.

PART III.

**GRAMMATICAL REVIEW WITH
VOCABULARY.**





ROMAN FORUM (from a recent photograph)

GRAMMATICAL REVIEW.

NOTE. — The references are to the Grammatical Index, p. 205.

Predicate Nominative, **118**. Two Accusatives, same person or thing (pred. acc.), **34**. Two Accusatives, person and thing, **35**. Two Accusatives with Compounds, **36**. Apposition, **48**.

1. 1. Athens was formerly regarded as¹ the inventress² of all ³branches of learning. 2. The Romans congratulated themselves⁴ because Cicero was elected consul. 3. Cicero when¹ prætor advocated the Manilian law; when¹ consul he crushed the conspiracy of Catiline. 4. The ancient⁵ Persians regarded the sun as the only god. 5. Cæsar leads all his cavalry over the bridge. 6. Cæsar ⁵when it came his turn, being asked his opinion⁵, spoke ⁶to the following effect. 7. For I have not concealed from you the discourse of Titus Ampius. 8. Two most powerful cities, Carthage and Numantia, were destroyed by Scipio. 9. Archias came to Rome ⁷in the consulship of Marius and Catulus. 10. Alexander the Great founded two cities in India; one⁸ he called Nicæa, the other⁸ Bucephale, from⁹ the name of his horse. 11. The envoys demand back from Verres the statue⁸ of Ceres and Victory. 12. Cæsar hastened through the whole Picenian territory.

1. ¹ Omit. — ² Plur. — ³ Plur. of *doctrīna*. — ⁴ Dat. — ⁵ *When it was come (101) to him.* — ⁶ *Words of this kind.* — ⁷ Express idiomatically. — ⁸ See **46**. — ⁹ Ex.

Infinitive as Subject and Predicate, 111. Infinitive as Object, 110.
Complementary Infinitive, 109. Subject of the Infinitive, 31.

2. 1. To labor is to pray. 2. Wherefore I have determined^s to prepare no defence ¹with regard to my new purposes; [yet] I have resolved, ²though conscious of no guilt^s, to offer an explanation. 3. Our ancestors wished the bodies of young men to be strengthened by toil. 4. This is characteristic³ of a well-regulated mind, both to rejoice at ⁴what is good and to grieve at the opposite. 5. We desire^s not so [much] to seem, as to be, good.⁵ 6. It is a wrong^s to bind a Roman citizen, a crime^s to scourge [one], almost^s parricide to kill^s [one]. 7. ⁶Archias had the good fortune to surpass all ⁷in the fame of his genius. 8. You, Catiline, ought⁸ to be put to death. 9. My voice ought to be first^s in public affairs. 10. I desire to be gentle.⁹ 11. If you love^s me, if you wish^s to be loved by me, send me¹⁰ a letter. 12. Now I neither care¹¹ to live^s, nor may¹² I die without disgrace. 13. You may go.

Tenses of the Infinitive, 113. Accusative with Infinitive, 31.
Indirect Discourse, 106. Historical Infinitive, 112.

3. 1. Catiline sent letters to most of the ex-consuls, [saying] that, ¹as he was beset by false accusations, he yielded to fortune, and ²was going into exile at³ Massilia. 2. Cethegus said that his associates were wasting great

2. ¹In.—²From (ex) no consciousness of (dē) guilt.—³Proprius. In what other way may this be expressed? See 78.—⁴Good things. Why would not bonis alone do?—⁵What does this agree with?—⁶It happened to Archias to surpass.—⁷Abl. of spec., 21.—⁸Oportet.—⁹This may be expressed in two ways.—¹⁰Ad mē.—¹¹It pleases me.—¹²Licet.

3. ¹Participle.—²Pres. inf.—³To, 30.

opportunities ⁴by hesitation and delay⁵: that in such danger there was need of action,⁶ not of deliberation.⁶ 3. He found⁸ that the consuls had started for Dyrrachium⁷ with a large part of the army⁸, [and] that Pompey was staying at Brundisium⁸ with his cohorts. 4. Cæsar told⁹ them that he had aimed at no extraordinary honor, but ¹⁰had waited for the legal time for being a candidate for the consulship, and had been content with what¹¹ was open to all the citizens. 5. The envoys report to Cæsar that they are aware that the Roman people are¹² divided into two parties, but that ¹³it belongs neither to their own judgment nor to their own powers to decide which¹⁴ party has¹⁵ the better cause. 6. About the ¹⁶first of June Cati-line ¹⁷began to address individuals; he exhorted some, he tampered with others; he showed his own resources, the unprepared [state of the] republic, [and] the great rewards of the conspiracy.

Adjectives: Agreement with Nouns of Different Genders, **38**;
as Nouns, **41**; as Adverbs, **42**; Denoting a Part, **39**.

4. 1. You have all orders, all men,⁸ and the whole⁸ Roman people ¹with one and⁸ the same feeling. 2. We seem to remember the past, to hope for the future.² 3. Labor⁸ and⁸ pleasure, [though] dissimilar ³in their nature, are bound together⁴ by ⁵a kind of natural association. 4. We say that ⁶folly, rashness, injustice, and intemperance

3. ⁴ Abl. of gerund, **93**. — ⁵ *Postponing the day*. — ⁶ Perf. part., **13**. — ⁷ Acc. of limit, **30**. — ⁸ Locative, **116**. — ⁹ *Doceō*; use the pres. — ¹⁰ *The legal time of the consulship being waited for*, etc. — ¹¹ *Eō quod*. — ¹² Remember that *populum* is sing. — ¹³ *It is of*, gen. of quality, **78**. — ¹⁴ *Which (of the two)*. — ¹⁵ Pres. subj.; why? — ¹⁶ See **159**. — ¹⁷ Hist. inf.

4. ¹ *Thinking one and the same [thing]*. — ² *Reliquus*. — ³ Abl. of spec., **21**. — ⁴ *Among themselves*. — ⁵ *Quidam*. — ⁶ For connectives see **60**.

ought to be shunned.⁷ 5. To Catiline, [even] from his youth, ⁸intestine wars, slaughter, rapine, and civil discord were pleasing. 6. ⁹When the opportunity was offered, Afranius leads out his forces and stations them on the middle of the hill. 7. The Gauls compel travellers to stand even ¹⁰against their will. 8. I have done more good¹¹ to-day unwittingly than [I] ever [did] before this day intentionally.¹² 9. Spain ¹³was the last^s of all the provinces to be thoroughly¹⁴ subdued. 10. At daybreak the top of the mountain was held by Labienus.

Relative Pronouns: Agreement, **43**; Antecedent in Relative Clause, **148**; Position of Relative Clause, **153**. Demonstrative Pronouns, **132**.

5. 1. We are deaf in those languages that we do not understand^s. ¹and they are innumerable. 2. Mummius destroyed Corinth, ²a city which at that time was the most splendid in³ Greece. 3. The victor did not⁴ spare even⁴ ⁵the women and children^s who⁶ were found in the town. 4. The violent spirit^s of Catiline was harassed by lack of means, and by the consciousness of guilt^s, ⁷both of which [evils] he had increased by those practices which I have mentioned above. 5. Thou, O⁸ Jupiter, who wast consecrated by the same auspices ⁹by which this city [was], wilt punish^s the enemies^s of our country. 6. ¹⁰That

4. ⁷For agreement of gerundive see **38**. — ⁸For lack of connectives see **60**. — ⁹Abl. abs. — ¹⁰*Unwillingly*. — ¹¹Partitive gen. — ¹²*Knowing*. — ¹³*Last* (adj.) . . . *was subdued*. — ¹⁴Expressed in the prefix of the verb.

5. ¹*Which are*. — ²*Which city*. — ³*Of*. — ⁴See **117**. Put the object first. — ⁵Dat., **71**. — ⁶What gender? **38**. — ⁷*Which both*, neut. — ⁸Not expressed. — ⁹Put this clause between "same" and "auspices." — ¹⁰*Which part* . . . *that*.

part of the state which had brought disaster upon the Romans ¹¹was the first to pay the penalty. 7. O fortunate young man, ¹²to have found^s a Homer as herald of your valor! 8. The latter again^s in [their] turn are in arms ¹³a year after, [while] the former stay ¹⁴at home. 9. Mithridates fled from his kingdom just¹⁵ as the famous Medea is said to have fled once from the same Pontus. 10. The former carefully protected the latter.

Pronouns: Indefinite, 133; Reflexive, 137. Final (Purpose) Clauses with *ut* and *nē*, 139; Sequence of Tenses, 160.

6. 1. Some states have [it] ordained by their laws that¹ if any^s one shall have heard² by rumor or report anything ³that concerns the public welfare, he shall report it to a magistrate, ⁴and not ⁵impart it to any one else. 2. Patience is a remedy ⁶for any^s pain whatever. 3. A tyrant neither loves^s any one,⁷ nor is loved by any one.⁸ 4. The general charges them ⁹as they are departing that each¹⁰ of them shall visit his own¹⁰ state and collect¹¹ for the war all ¹²who are old enough to bear arms. 5. Some call it error, some fear; ¹³no one but you, crime⁶. 6. One part of that village he granted to the Gauls, the other he assigned to the cohorts. 7. Nevertheless he decided^s that they ¹⁴should not be detained, lest he should appear either^s to offer an insult or betray¹⁵ some suspicion of fear. 8. Indu-

5. ¹¹ *First (princeps) paid, 40.* — ¹² *Who have found; perf. subj., 51.* — ¹³ *After by a year, 7.* — ¹⁴ *See 116.* — ¹⁵ *Sic.*

6. ¹ *Utī.* — ² *Received.* — ³ *Concerning the republic.* — ⁴ *Nēve.* — ⁵ *Share it with any other.* — ⁶ *Put the dat. first.* — ⁷ *Quisquam.* — ⁸ *Ūllus; the abl. of quisquam is rarely used, and the abl. of ūllus, generally an adj., is used instead.* — ⁹ *Participle.* — ¹⁰ *Suus and quisque in the same sentence go together.* — ¹¹ *Plur.* — ¹² *Who through age can; subjunc.* — ¹³ *In this order, crime except you no one.* — ¹⁴ *Second periph. conj.* — ¹⁵ *Give.*

tiomarus said that the state was in his own power⁵, and that, if Cæsar would permit,¹⁶ he would come to him, and would trust¹⁷ his own fortunes and those of the state to his protection. 9. Not forgetful of his first intention, Cæsar sends Clodius to him (Pompey), his own and Pompey's¹⁸ intimate [friend].

Questions: Direct, 144; Double, 145; Indirect, 146.
Interrogative Particles, 147.

7. 1. ¹Therefore was any^s investigation proposed concerning the death of Africanus? Certainly none. 2. What² name was ever more illustrious in the world? 3. Do you think that you can enjoy ³these things? 4. What reason was there why he should hasten ⁴to Rome? 5. I do not know what the reason was. 6. ⁵I am uncertain whether I am more violently impelled by the sword or by hunger. 7. It is evident that a plot⁶ was laid⁷; by which of the two it was laid is uncertain. 8. ⁸Does any other question come to trial except ⁹which of the two laid a plot for the other? 9. There was a great contention among the commanders whether they should defend themselves ¹⁰in the city, or go to meet the enemy and fight it out ¹¹in battle^s array. 10. Does not the cause seem to you [to be] good? — Yes, very good. 11. Did you estrange the minds of the allies from the republic or not? 12. He could not tell whether he had estranged their minds or not.

6. ¹⁶ Imp. subj. — ¹⁷ *His and the state's fortunes.* — ¹⁸ Use a pronoun.

7. ¹ The answer shows what interrogative is to be used. — ² Do not affix *-ne* to another interrog. word. Distinguish between the interrog. adj. and the interrog. pron. — ³ See 24. — ⁴ See 30. — ⁵ In this order: *whether by the sword or, etc.* — ⁶ Plur. — ⁷ *Made.* — ⁸ *Num quid aliud.*

⁹ *Uter utri, etc.* — ¹⁰ *With walls^s.* — ¹¹ *By line of battle.*

Accusative: Cognate, **26**; Adverbial, **25**; of Specification, **32**;
in Exclamations, **28**. See also Exercises, 1, 2, 3.

8. 1. I had already foretold to many (and) distinguished men^s that they would come to me ¹at that time. 2. The reign of Tullus, excellent ²in other [respects], was not quite successful ³in one point, ⁴for the ⁵religious ceremonies had either been neglected or improperly performed. 3. ⁶With a loud voice I swore a most just and noble oath. 4. Last⁷ night I dreamed a strange dream. 5. O happy [will be] that land which ⁸shall receive this man; ungrateful this [country] if it casts⁸ him out; miserable if it loses⁸ him! 6. Turnus ⁹with his temples yet bare had girded his sword to his side. 7. Scipio inquired of the boy who he was, and why he was in camp ¹⁰at that age. 8. O clemency admirable, and [worthy] to be honored with the praise and commendation of all in¹¹ writings and monuments! 9. ¹²Blind that I was ¹³not to have seen^s this before! 10. Hannibal, ¹⁴in approaching the wall ¹⁵without sufficient caution, fell struck with a dart in the front of the thigh.

Accusative: of Extent and Duration, **29**; of Limit of Motion, **30**.
Order of Words and Emphasis, **122, 74**.

NOTE. — Rules regarding the order and arrangement of words do not belong to any one exercise more than to every other. They should be kept continually in mind.

9. 1. The soldiers built up a mound three hundred and thirty feet wide¹ [and] eighty feet high. 2. The field

8. ¹Not *illō tempore*. — ²Use the acc. — ³*From one part*. — ⁴Use the abl. abs. — ⁵Plur. of *religiō*. — ⁶Abl. of manner, **10**. — ⁷*This*. — ⁸Fut. perf. — ⁹*Bare as to his temples*. — ¹⁰Not the abl. — ¹¹*By*. — ¹²*Me blind*. — ¹³*Who have not seen*; perf. subj., **51**. — ¹⁴*While (dum) he was approaching*. — ¹⁵*More incautiously*.

9. ¹If the adjective were not used, what case would "feet" be in?

[of] Marathon is distant from Athens about ten miles. 3. ²And when they had come³ to the river Liger,⁴ they stayed⁵ there a few days, ⁶but not daring⁷ to cross the river, returned home. 4. Concerning these islands some have written that ⁸at the time of the winter solstice it is night for thirty days in succession. 5. Nor were they further⁹ than eight miles from Cæsar's winter-quarters. 6. Lucretia sends the same message to Rome ¹⁰to her father and to her husband at¹¹ Ardea ¹²to come ¹³each with a faithful friend. 7. Marcus Livius betook himself to the country, and⁸ there stayed many years. 8. After the defeat ¹⁴at Cannæ, the remains of the Roman army had fled for refuge to Canusium. 9. The baggage of the whole army⁸ he sends to Labienus among¹⁵ the Treveri, and orders⁸ two legions to proceed to him.

Genitive: Subjective, 84; Possessive, 82; Descriptive (of Quality), 78; Partitive, 81.

10. 1. Nor was there ¹a single person but² thought³ that on the issue of that day depended the outcome of all his own fortunes. 2. Titus was [a man] of such affability and generosity that he refused ³nothing to any one. 3. Your letters are of the greatest weight with⁴ me. 4. It is foolish⁵ to discern the faults of others [and] to forget ⁶one's own. 5. ⁷Any⁸ man may err; no one but a fool will persist in error. 6. The enemy⁸ set fire to their own

9. ² *Who when.* — ³ Plup. subj., 172. — ⁴ Look out for the acc. ending. — ⁵ Use the part. — ⁶ *Neque.* — ⁷ Perf. part. — ⁸ *Sub.* — ⁹ *Longius*, 47. — ¹⁰ Not the dat. — ¹¹ *To.* — ¹² *That they come*; purpose. — ¹³ *With single (singulī) faithful friends.* — ¹⁴ Use the adj. — ¹⁵ *In.*

10. ¹ *Any one of all.* — ² *Quin* w. subj. — ³ *To no one anything.* — ⁴ *Apud.* — ⁵ [Characteristic] *of folly.* — ⁶ *His own*; gen., 88. — ⁷ *It is of any one to err; of no one . . . to persist, etc.*

houses ⁸so that nothing of their possessions might come into the power^s of the victor. 7. Trajan alone, ⁹of all the emperors, was buried within the walls^s of the city. 8. No one ⁹of us is the same in old age ¹⁰as he was when young. 9. You think that nothing new ¹¹ought to be done contrary to the customs^s of our ancestors. 10. ¹²Disappointed in this hope, the Nervii encircle their winter-quarters with a rampart¹³ of nine feet, and a ditch of fifteen feet. 11. If you¹⁴ make this of ¹⁵as much importance as I¹⁴ have always thought it ¹¹ought to be made, you will do wisely.

Genitive: Objective, **80**; with Adjectives, **76**; with Verbs of Memory, **88**; with Verbs of Judicial Action, **87**.

11. 1. But the enemy, ¹destitute of [all] honor, were seeking a time and opportunity for fraud and treachery. 2. Hannibal urged his soldiers ²to remember their former valor, ³and not to forget their women and children^s. 3. But after⁴ he heard that he had been condemned ⁵to death, ⁶with confiscation of his property, he removed ⁷to Lacedæmon. 4. And so, forgetful of his father's⁸ command, he rushed into the fight, and, ⁹striking the Latin from his horse, pierced him through. 5. Mindful of those injunctions which they had received a little [while] before, they contended with the greatest spirit. 6. Moderate ¹⁰in eating and drinking, sparing of sleep, he trained

10. ⁸ *Lest anything.* — ⁹ What besides the gen. may be used? — ¹⁰ *Who was [when] young.* — ¹¹ **Facendum.** — ¹² *Repulsed from this hope.* — ¹³ Abl. — ¹⁴ To be expressed, because contrasted. — ¹⁵ **Tantī . . . quantī.**

11. ¹ *Without.* — ² Purpose clause w. **ut.** — ³ **Nēve.** — ⁴ **Postquam.** — ⁵ *Of his head.* — ⁶ *Goods being confiscated.* — ⁷ See **30.** — ⁸ Adj. — ⁹ *Pierced through the Latin struck (part.).* — ¹⁰ *Of food and wine.*

his body among the soldiers. 7. Pyrrhus was skilled in war and desirous of nothing¹¹ but power^s. 8. These services you have from me, whom you charge with treachery. 9. Cæsar said¹² that he ought¹³ to be found guilty of the greatest injustice, if he did not hold their life dearer than his own safety.

Genitive: with Verbs of Emotion, 86; with **interest** and **rēfert**, 85; with Words of Plenty and Want, 89. Impersonal Verbs, 100.

12. 1. Atticus was never weary of [any] business¹ that he took in hand. 2. It is incredible² how weary I am with this business. 3. It is of great³ interest to both⁴ of us⁵ that I should see you. 4. You see that this concerns you⁶ more than me.⁷ 5. Our ancestors, conscript fathers, were lacking⁸ neither in wisdom nor audacity. 6. Therefore Brutus, having encouraged his [men], set out against the enemy full of good hopes⁸ and courage. 7. You have heard, judges, ⁹how much it was for the advantage of Clodius¹⁰ that Milo should be killed^s. 8. What advantage was it to Milo that Clodius should be slain? 9. There are men¹¹ who are neither ashamed¹² of their own infamy nor disgusted [with it]. 10. We rather pity those who do not seek^s our pity than those who urgently¹³ demand^s it. 11. It little³ concerns us what others do, provided we do¹⁴ right ourselves. 12. What ignorant men say of me does not¹⁵ concern me at all.

11. ¹¹ *No thing*. — ¹² Use the pres., and the primary sequence in the dependent verb “hold.” — ¹³ **Dēbeō**.

12. ¹ *Undertaken*. — ² *How (quam) it wearies me of*, etc. Note the ind. quest. — ³ Gen. of value. — ⁴ **Nostrūm** or **nostrī**? 121. — ⁵ **Ut w.** subj. — ⁶ **Not tuī**. — ⁷ **Not meī**. — ⁸ Sing. — ⁹ **Quantum**. — ¹⁰ Acc. w. inf. — ¹¹ *Whom it shames*, etc. — ¹² Pres. subj., 149. — ¹³ Expressed in the verb. — ¹⁴ Pres. subj., 73. — ¹⁵ **Not . . . at all = nihil, 32.**

Dative: Indirect Object, 66; with Transitives and Intransitives, 66; with Passive of Intransitives, 101; with Compounds, 64.

13. 1. Our ancestors, ¹in drawing up laws, set before themselves nothing else but the safety and advantage of the state. 2. You have committed the republic to a watchful, not a timid, man; to an industrious, not an idle [one]. 3. The Romans took it hard because Sertorius ²put more confidence in the Spaniards than in themselves. 4. O, my country, thou hast overcome³ my wrath ³by employing my mother's prayers, ⁴for whose sake I pardon thy injury ⁵to me. 5. ⁶When Manlius returned to Rome, the elders went out ⁷to meet him. 6. Cæsar used his victory ⁸with indulgence, and spared all who bore arms⁸ against him. 7. For so the people had been persuaded ⁹that both their former adversity¹⁰ and their present prosperity had happened¹¹ through his means. 8. He ¹²is to be deemed⁸ free who ¹³is slave to no base passion. 9. On the highest [part of the] Sacred Way, the maiden was placed sitting on a horse. 10. Not only is that time of life not envied, but it is even favored. 11. Nor yet could any⁸ state of the Germans be persuaded ¹⁴to cross the Rhine. 12. No wise man ever thought that a traitor ¹⁵ought to be trusted. 13. Every sense of man¹⁶ is far¹⁷ superior to the senses of animals. 14. ¹⁸He compares his own old age to that of a spirited and victorious horse.

13. ¹In w. gerundive. — ²Trusted more (*magis*) to; verb in the imp. subjunc., 49. — ³Abl. abs. — ⁴To whom I pardon. — ⁵In *mē*; put between "thy" and "injury." — ⁶To Manlius returning. — ⁷Obviam. — ⁸Adv. — ⁹Acc. w. inf. — ¹⁰Adverse things. — ¹¹Abl. of cause. — ¹²Second periph. conj. — ¹³Serves. — ¹⁴Ut w. subj. Cf. the acc. and inf. after "persuade" in 7. — ¹⁵Crēdendum, impers. — ¹⁶Plur. — ¹⁷By much. — ¹⁸In this order: *Of a horse spirited and victorious to the old age he compares his own.*

Dative: of Possession, 67; of Separation, 70; of Agency, 63;
of Purpose, 68.

14. 1. Proceed as you are doing, and devote yourselves¹ to that pursuit in which you are [engaged] in order that you may be able to be² an honor to yourselves, an advantage to your friends, and a benefit to the state. 2. Being oppressed with debt, Cæsar³ used to say that⁴ he needed⁵ a hundred million sesterces⁶ to have nothing. 3. He hoped that the most opulent king of all Africa would be of use to him. 4. Therefore I must seek⁷ not so [much] copiousness as moderation in speaking.⁸ 5. What must we do? All must labor in this cause. 6. Always in the state [those] who have no resources envy the good. 7. Therefore this province must be defended by you not only from calamity, but also from the fear of calamity. 8. At some time let those leaders confess⁹ that both they and the rest must obey the authority of the whole⁸ Roman people. 9. Take away fear from me. 10. What cannot be taken away from a brave man⁸ remains, and will remain¹⁰ to the end. 11. Not always are those happy who have riches. 12. To that gallant gentleman, his father, he was a great aid in danger¹¹ and a comfort in trial.¹¹

Dative: with Adjectives, 62; of Reference, 69; Ethical, 65.

15. 1. To the Romans,¹ as they came out of the pass, the light was sadder than death itself. 2. What do those

14. ¹ In w. acc. — ² Et . . . et . . . et, 60. — ³ See 38. — ⁴ *There was need to him.* — ⁵ *Milliēs (centēna millia) sēstertium*; A. 379; G. app.; H. 647, IV. 1. — ⁶ Purpose. — ⁷ Second periph. conj.; put the verb last, and make it agree with the second noun. — ⁸ Gerund. — ⁹ Hort subj., 165. — ¹⁰ Expressed in the prefix of the verb. — ¹¹ Plur.

15. ¹ Use participle.

gilded equestrian statues^s mean²? 3. ³Let [those] be silent to whom Italy is a stepmother,⁴ not a mother. 4. Behind his sons walked Perses with his wife, like [one] stunned and stupefied. 5. And so the elder⁵ brother set out for⁶ Asia as lieutenant to the younger. 6. In a warlike state, more kings are like Romulus than [like] Numa. 7. ⁷It is the intention to transplant all the Alban people to Rome, and, O ye Albans, ⁸may it be fortunate, auspicious, and happy to the Roman people, and also ⁹to you and me. 8. I have lived long enough either^s for nature or for glory. 9. Now in truth what eloquence can be found^s equal to the valor of Gnæus Pompey? 10. This was once peculiar to the Roman people,¹⁰ to carry on war ¹¹at a distance from home. 11. I do not compare him who does these things with the greatest men, but I judge^s him very like a god.

Ablative: of Separation, **19**; of Plenty and Want, **16**; of Source, **20**; of Agent, **4**; of Comparison, **6**.

16. 1. There can be nothing honorable that is without justice. 2. Tiberius Gracchus, tribune of the plebs, compelled his colleague to resign his office. 3. From this ¹avenue to glory not my inclination hitherto, but my plan² of life, adopted ³at an early age, has kept me. 4. Mercury was born of Jupiter and Maia. 5. Pleasant to me were your letters, from which I knew^s that you clearly⁴ perceived ⁵my devotion to you. 6. He was

15. ² *Wish for themselves.* — ³ Hort. subj. — ⁴ Pred. nom. — ⁵ Not senior. — ⁶ In. — ⁷ *It is in mind.* — ⁸ *May which be,* optative subj., **166**; put this clause first. — ⁹ *To me and you.* — ¹⁰ Gen. — ¹¹ *Far.*

16. ¹ *Approach of.* — ² Plur. — ³ *From the beginning* (part. of *ineō*) *age.* — ⁴ Expressed in the prefix of the verb. — ⁵ In this order: *my to (in) you devotion.*

wholly⁶ made [up] of⁷ fraud and falsehood. 7. The barbarians, seeing⁸ the standards afar off, abandon⁸ the siege. 8. By no one of those⁹ who object to this law has Lucius Lucullus been similarly praised. 9. An early return from those places was sought by the soldiers¹⁰ rather than a further advance. 10. For what is pleasanter than an old age encompassed by the studies of youth? 11. Nothing is dearer to this young man than the republic, nothing sweeter than true glory. 12. Who then was ever more experienced than this man?

Ablative: of Means or Instrument, 11; with *utor*, etc., 24;
of Cause, 5; of Manner, 10; of Accompaniment, 2.

17. 1. Not by¹ exertions of strength or by swiftness or quickness of body² are great things done, but by wisdom, authority, judgment. 2. He thought that he should retain³ under his power³ the Greek-speaking⁴ inhabitants⁵ of Asia. 3. ⁶Although Datis saw that the place was³ not favorable to his men, nevertheless, relying on the number of his troops, he was eager to engage. 4. ⁷May I be permitted to enjoy with a tranquil and quiet mind⁸ the sight of this city which I have preserved. 5. The blessings that we have,⁸ the light that we enjoy, [and] the breath that we draw, we see are given us⁹ by Jupiter. 6. Miltiades, although¹⁰ he was weak from the wounds that he had received ¹¹in besieging⁸ the town, was

16. ⁶ Adj. — ⁷ Ex. — ⁸ Perf. part.; why not pres.? — ⁹ Iste. — ¹⁰ Separate "rather" and "than" by one or more words.

17. ¹ Plur. of *vis*. — ² Plur. — ³ What tense in the direct form? — ⁴ *Speaking with the Greek tongue*. — ⁵ *Who inhabited*, imp. subj., 108. — ⁶ Order: *Datis, although (etsi)*, etc. — ⁷ *May it be permitted to me*; opt. subj. — ⁸ *Use*. — ⁹ Dat. — ¹⁰ *Quamquam*. — ¹¹ In w. gerundive.

cast into the ¹²state's prison. 7. To me indeed Gnæus and Publius Scipio¹³ and your two grandfathers seemed fortunate in the company of noble young men. 8. To live^a happily is nothing else but¹⁴ to live properly,¹⁵ that is, virtuously.¹⁶ 9. The Athenians were heard in¹⁷ silence. 10. Nevertheless, all had fallen with wounds in front. 11. Meanwhile Commius and ¹⁸the rest^s of the leaders arrive with all their forces near Alesia.

Ablative: of Degree, 7; of Quality, 18; of Price, 17; of Specification, 21; with *dignus*, 8; Ablative Absolute, 1 (see Exercise 22).

18. 1. How long, then, shall he who has surpassed^a all enemies in crime^a lack^a the name¹ of enemy? 2. And, in the first place, of how great integrity ought commanders to be? secondly, of how great temperance ²in all things? 3. He was a man pre-eminent, not only in mental³ force, but also in bodily⁴ strength. 4. Miltiades [though] acquitted ⁵on the capital charge, was [nevertheless] fined,⁶ and that fine was assessed at fifty talents. 5. Both⁷ of us⁸ are richer in unpopularity than in money. 6. ⁹The more carefully *you* do¹⁰ these things, so much the weaker will *their*¹¹ courage be. 7. The victory ¹²cost the Carthaginians much blood. 8. Hitherto he has received no punishment worthy of his crime. 9. Our ancestors often waged wars because our merchants had been treated too¹³ unjustly: pray, ¹⁴what feelings ought you to have

17. ¹² *Public chains*. — ¹³ Plur.; different from the Eng. idiom. — ¹⁴ *Unless*. — ¹⁵ Adv. — ¹⁶ *With virtue*. — ¹⁷ *With*. — ¹⁸ *Remaining leaders*.

18. ¹ What abl.? — ² Use the prep. w. abl. — ³ *Of mind*. — ⁴ *Of body*. — ⁵ *Of his head*, 87. — ⁶ *Punished by money*. — ⁷ *Uterque*. — ⁸ *Vestrūm* or *vestri*? — ⁹ *By how much more diligently*. — ¹⁰ Future. — ¹¹ *To them*. — ¹² *Stood to the Carthaginians*. — ¹³ *More*. — ¹⁴ *Of what mind ought you to be?*

when so many thousands of Roman citizens have been slain^s? 10. The king's physician, having read the letter^s through, showed more indignation¹⁵ than fear. 11. Virtue is deserving of imitation, not of envy.

Ablative: of Time, **22**; of Place in which, **14**; of Place from which, **15**. Locative, **116**.

19. 1. This war, so great [and] so long-continued, Gnæus Pompey prepared for in the ¹end of winter, undertook ²in the beginning of spring, [and] finished in mid-summer. 2. In the Peloponnesian war the Athenians, by the advice and authority of Alcibiades, declared^s war against the Syracusans. 3. Cæsar said that he ³would rather be first in that poor^s village than second in Rome. 4. Furthermore, what greed⁴ can there be in ⁵a man who has always dwelt^{s6} in the country, and ⁷passed his life ⁸in cultivating the soil? 5. Therefore ⁹I am not going to proclaim ¹⁰what great deeds he has done at home and in the field, by land and sea. 6. So, after securing peace by land and sea, Scipio ¹¹put his army on board ship and returned to Rome. 7. The enemy lead over their forces and form their line of battle in an unfavorable place. 8. Their leaders ¹²gave orders to proclaim ¹³all along the line ¹⁴that no one should quit¹⁵ his post. 9. After Gaul was laid waste, the Cimbri by and by departed ¹⁶from our boundaries. 10. The planet Saturn¹⁷ completes its course in about thirty years.

18. ¹⁵ Gen.

19. ¹ *Extrēmus*. — ² *Spring beginning*. — ³ *Preferred to be*. — ⁴ Plur. — ⁵ Is. — ⁶ Perf. subj., **149**. — ⁷ *Vivō*. — ⁸ In w. gerundive. — ⁹ First periph. conj. — ¹⁰ *How great*. — ¹¹ Make an abl. abs. clause here. — ¹² *Iubeō*. — ¹³ *In the whole line*. — ¹⁴ *Nē quis*. — ¹⁵ *Depart from*. — ¹⁶ Is it more common to use or omit the prep. in such cases as this? — ¹⁷ Gen.

The Roman Calendar, Dates, **159**. Time before or after an Event, **175**. The Way by which, **23**.

NOTE. — The following dates may all be reckoned by the Julian calendar. How is the date of the Roman year commonly expressed ?

20. 1. On the 4th of June, when¹ I was at Brundisium,² I received your letter. 2. I came to Tralles³ on the 27th of July. 3. I think I shall be at Laodicæa on the 31st of July. 4. Now is the end of the year; for I have written this letter Nov. 18. I see plainly that nothing can be done before Jan. 1. 5. We started from⁴ Brundisium April 27. 6. My Terentia, most faithful and excellent wife, my dearest little daughter, and Cicero, our remaining hope, good-bye. Brundisium,⁵ April 30. 7. We departed from you, as you know⁶, on the 2d of November. We came to Leucas on the 6th of November, to Actium on the 7th; there we stayed the 8th on account⁷ of the weather. 8. Meanwhile, a few days after, he was⁸ informed by the Ubii that all the Suevi were collecting their forces into one place. 9. There having obtained fresh cavalry, which he had sent (forward) there⁷ many days before, he hastened to the Lingones. 10. You were quaestor⁸ when Papirius was consul fourteen years ago; what you have done from that day⁹ to this (day) I call⁹ into judgment. 11. When¹⁰ our cavalry had scattered over the fields, he¹¹ would send out charioteers from the woods by all the roads and paths. 12. At dawn, he made a sally from two gates¹² at the same time. 13. I sent forward the cavalry by a shorter road.

20. ¹ Cum. — ² See 116. — ³ See 30. — ⁴ No prep. — ⁵ Abl.; letters were supposed to be written *from*, not *at*, a place. — ⁶ Use hist. pres. — ⁷ Not *ibi*. — ⁸ Abl. abs. — ⁹ Fem. What is usually the gender of *diēs* ? — ¹⁰ Cum w. plup. ind. — ¹¹ What is the tense of customary past action ? **98.** — ¹² Adv.

The Subjunctive: Hortatory, **165**; Optative, **166**; Deliberative, **164**; Potential, **167** (see Exercise 31). Prohibitions, **131**. The Imperative, **96**.

21. 1. ¹The bravest man that Rome now has, let him come forward to battle.* 2. ²Let nothing new³ be done contrary to the precedents and usages of our ancestors. 3. ⁴O that I might seem [to be] a husband worthy of such a wife! 4. ⁵Do not suppose⁶ that our ancestors, ⁶from [so] small [a beginning] made the republic great by [force of] arms. 5. Wherefore, when you determine⁷ about Lentulus and the rest, regard⁸ it as⁹ fixed that at the same time you decide⁸ about Catiline's army. 6. Let not an ungodly [man] dare⁸ to appease the anger of the gods by gifts. 7. What are you to do ¹⁰with this man? 8. May my fellow-citizens be strong, may they be happy. 9. Let us love⁸ our country, obey the senate, neglect present rewards, [and] labor for the glory of posterity. 10. What you do not wish to be done to you, do not do to another.¹¹ 11. Who would hesitate by his vote to free himself from fear, the republic from danger? 12. O Quirites, would that you had such an abundance of brave and blameless men that this decision ¹²would be difficult for you!

Uses of the Participle, Time, Cause, etc., **123**. Tenses of the Participle, **126**. Ablative Absolute, **1**.

22. 1. Our commanders have ¹had triumphs for victories over Mithridates; but ²such triumphs that he, though

21. ¹ *Whom Rome now has bravest.* — ² *Nē quid.* — ³ Not the nom. — ⁴ Regard this as an unattainable wish. — ⁵ Use the most common way of expressing a prohibition. — ⁶ *From small*, opp. to "great." — ⁷ Fut. — ⁸ Fut. imperative; why fut.? — ⁹ *Prō.* — ¹⁰ Abl.; why? — ¹¹ *Alter.* — ¹² Subj. of result.

22. ¹ *Triumphō dē Mith.* — ² *They so triumphed.*

defeated^a and overcome^a, [still] reigned. 2. Laughter sometimes breaks out so suddenly^a ³that we cannot check it ⁴if we wish to. 3. On the line of march, sometimes on horse[back], oftener on foot,⁵ Cæsar ⁶used to go before ⁷with his head uncovered, ⁸rain or shine. 4. Xerxes, having taken^a Thermopylæ, immediately^a set out for Athens,⁹ and destroyed that city by fire^a after slaying the priests whom he had found^a in the citadel. 5. After peace was made in¹⁰ all places, the Romans had no¹¹ war. ¹²Since the founding of the city, this had happened^a once, in the reign of Numa. 6. Having dislodged the garrison and ¹³having got possession of the place, he stationed two legions there. 7. Although the fathers opposed, nevertheless the law^a was passed. 8. But^a because he feared^a that he should suffer punishment ¹⁴at home ¹⁵for the loss of the fleet, he averted the displeasure of the citizens ¹⁶by a crafty device. 9. All ¹⁷who do one¹⁸ thing and pretend another¹⁸ are dishonest. 10. Tyrtæus ¹⁹composed songs and recited them to the army.

The Participle: Future Active and Future Passive (Gerundive), 126.
The Periphrastic Conjugations, 127, 128. Dative of Agent, 63.

23. 1. Perses returned, ¹intending to try the chances² of war anew. 2. We [who are] about to die salute [you]. 3. But ³we must begin^a at⁴ the beginning. 4. Whither-soever ⁵you please to go, a way^a must be opened with the

22. ³ Result clause, 155. — ⁴ *Wishing*. — ⁵ Plur. — ⁶ See 98. — ⁷ *Head being uncovered*. — ⁸ *Whether there were sun or shower*. — ⁹ The limit of motion. — ¹⁰ Should the prep. be used? — ¹¹ *Not*. — ¹² *From the city founded*. — ¹³ Why should this part. not be in the abl.? — ¹⁴ *In his country*. — ¹⁵ *Of the fleet lost*. — ¹⁶ *By craft*. — ¹⁷ *Doing*. — ¹⁸ See 46. — ¹⁹ *Recited songs composed*.

23. ¹ Fut. act. part. — ² Sing. — ³ Pass. impers. — ⁴ *From*. — ⁵ *It pleases you*.

sword. 5. Scipio was wont to say that not only ought a road^s to be given, but even built for ⁶those who flee. 6. Can any one^s doubt ⁷that, if Quintus Ligarius ⁸could have been in Italy, he would have been ⁹of the same mind ¹⁰as his brothers? 7. For no longer are the causes to be compared ¹¹with each other, but the victories. 8. ¹²Were you going to deliver that province to Cæsar or to retain it against Cæsar? 9. And all these¹³ wounds of war must now be healed by you, which no one but you can cure. ¹⁰10. You must either^s retain three Ligariuses in the state, or ¹⁴drive three beyond the bounds of the state. 11. Cæsar ordered¹⁵ the lieutenants ¹⁶to have as many ships built in the winter as they could,¹⁷ and the old^s [ones] refitted. 12. I thought that all my time ought to be devoted to the exigencies of my friends. 13. First^s then ¹⁸we must discuss ¹⁹the honorable, next the useful.

Gerund and Gerundive, 90-93. Supine, 169, 170.

NOTE. — In such cases as admit either the gerund or the gerundive construction, write both.

24. 1. Gaius Gracchus proposed a law for¹ distributing grain to the common people. 2. When² the day came for³ pleading his cause, Scipio was escorted into the Forum by a large crowd of men. 3. Nor was he less prompt ⁴in action than in invention. 4. Cato was wont

23. ⁶*The fleeing.* — ⁷ **Quin** w. perf. subj. periph. — ⁸ *Had been able* (plup. subj.) *to be*, 55. — ⁹ *In the same opinion.* — ¹⁰ *In which his brothers were.* — ¹¹ *Among themselves.* — ¹² What interrogatives for a double question? — ¹³ *Which.* — ¹⁴ *Exterminate from.* — ¹⁵ **Imperō.** — ¹⁶ To have a thing done, **cūrō** w. gerundive. — ¹⁷ Imp. subj., 162. — ¹⁸ Impers. — ¹⁹ *Concerning [what is] honorable.*

24. ¹ **Dē.** — ² **Ubi.** — ³ *Of.* — ⁴ *In (in) doing things than in thinking [them] out.*

to say that Cæsar alone of all came to⁵ the overthrow of the republic sober. 5. Pompey, although⁶ [he was] wounded ⁷and had lost his horse, ⁸swam over the river Rhone, ⁷retaining his breastplate and shield. 6. What else did Gaius Pansa aim at by holding levies and procuring funds, except that Decimus Brutus should be freed? 7. For men in no way⁹ approach nearer to the gods than by granting deliverance to [their fellow] men. 8. Let us now go forthwith to the Capitol ¹⁰to pray to Jupiter Optimus Maximus. 9. It is difficult to say whether the enemy, [while] fighting^s, feared^s his valor more, or, [when] conquered, appreciated his kindness. 10. He came into the Senate ¹¹for the sake of dissembling. 11. Fabius was sent to Delphi to the oracle, ¹²to inquire by what prayers they might propitiate the gods. 12. Themistocles withdrew to Argos to live^s.

Final (Purpose) Clauses: Pure, **139**; Relative, **143**; Substantive or Complementary, **141**.

25. 1. Cleomenes ordered¹ the mast to be set up, the sails spread, [and] the anchors weighed; he also ordered² a signal to be given ³for the rest^s to follow. 2. The plebs elected tribunes ⁴to defend their liberty against the pride of the nobility. 3. He advises him to forbid fires ⁵being made in the camp, ⁶so that no indication of his arrival may be made at a distance. 4. ⁷But if fortune shall be unfavorable to your valor, ⁸be sure not to lose your lives⁹

24. ⁵ Ad. — ⁶ Quamquam. — ⁷ Abl. abs. — ⁸ Crossed by swimming. — ⁹ Thing. — ¹⁰ Supine. — ¹¹ Causā. — ¹² Supine.

25. ¹ Imperō. — ² Iubeō, 115. — ³ Ut, etc. — ⁴ Rel. clause. — ⁵ To be made. — ⁶ Lest any. — ⁷ Quod si. — ⁸ Beware lest you lose. What about nō? — ⁹ Sing.

unavenged. 5. He built a bridge over the river by which¹⁰ to lead his troops over. 6. Neither shall the hostile edict^s of any^s one prevent me¹¹ from defending your rights⁹ ¹²through reliance on you. 7. Cæsar told¹³ Dolabella to write to me to come into Italy as soon as possible. 8. Cæsar learned that¹⁴ it was owing to Afranius that¹⁵ there was no engagement. 9. I fear^s that I can¹⁶ make no return to you but tears. 10. I see^s that you undertake all labors^s; I fear that you will not endure [them]. 11. A law ought¹⁷ to be short¹⁸ that it may the more easily be grasped by the ignorant. 12. I am reluctant¹⁹ to be an applauder lest I should seem a flatterer.

Consecutive (Result) Clauses: Pure, **155**; Relative, **156**;
Substantive or Complementary, **157**.

26. 1. I have so lived that I think^s I was not born in vain.^s 2. But yet I so enjoy the recollection¹ of our friendship that I seem to have lived happily because I have lived² with Scipio. 3. When, now, he³ was on the point of getting possession of the town, a grove, ⁴by some chance or other, was set on fire in the night time. 4. Peace was granted on this condition,⁵ that all^s should be led under the yoke. 5. No one was so lowly⁶ that he did not have free access to him. 6. So much the more powerful were the Athenians on account^s of their valor

25. ¹⁰ Not inf. — ¹¹ *Quō minus*, etc. — ¹² *Relying on you*. — ¹³ Note the difference between this use of *dicere* and its common use. — ¹⁴ *Per Af. stāre quō minus*. — ¹⁵ *It was not fought in battle*. — ¹⁶ *Return nothing*. — ¹⁷ *Oportet*. — ¹⁸ What particle is used when a comparative is in the sentence? — ¹⁹ *Unwilling*.

26. ¹ *Emphatic*. — ² *Perf. subj.*, 107. — ³ *In eō esset ut*. — ⁴ *I know not by what chance*. — ⁵ *Law*. — ⁶ *To whom access to him was not open*.

that they overthrew⁷ a tenfold number of the enemy. 7. ⁸There was no doubt that the Romans would render aid⁸ to their good and faithful allies. 8. Although⁹ I have nothing ¹⁰to write to you, nevertheless I write because I seem to be talking with you. 9. So far is it [from the fact] that the fruits of the earth are prepared for the sake of animals, that we see animals themselves to have been created for¹¹ man.¹² 10. It remains ¹³for us to consider what the nature of these things is.

Relative: of Characteristic, 149; of Cause or Reason, 51; of Proviso, 152; with *ūnus* and *sōlus*, 154; with *dignus*, etc., 151; of Concession, 150.

27. 1. For who was there who did not see that lowliness was contending⁹ with greatness? 2. Will any one⁸ doubt what he will accomplish¹ by his valor who has accomplished so much by his prestige? 3. Romulus appointed one hundred senators, whether because that number was enough or because there were only² a hundred who could be appointed. 4. ³It seems to me that I did wrong ⁴in leaving⁸ you. 5. The plays ⁵of Livius are not ⁶worth reading a second time. 6. There was not a wealthy house in Sicily where⁷ that man did not set up a cloth factory. 7. There was formerly a time ⁸when the Gauls surpassed⁸ the Germans in valor. 8. You. Gaius Cæsar, are the only one in whose victory no one

26. ⁷ Perf. subj., though following a secondary tense, 161. — ⁸ *It was not doubtful.* — ⁹ *Etsi.* — ¹⁰ *Which I may write.* — ¹¹ *Grātiā.* — ¹² Plur. — ¹³ *That we consider.*

27. ¹ Pres. subj., periphrastic conj. — ² *Alone* (adj.). — ³ *I seem to myself to have erred.* — ⁴ *Who have departed from you.* — ⁵ Adj. — ⁶ *Worthy which may be read.* — ⁷ *Ubi*, a relative adverb. — ⁸ Note that this is a characteristic clause.

fell unless ⁹with arms in his hands. 9. There are some who think that death is the departure of the soul from the body. 10. I, ¹⁰ ¹¹although I took up Greek literature late and [but] slightly, nevertheless stayed several days in Athens. 11. And [he] who before ¹²had had hostile feelings towards us was much more seriously provoked at this grievance.

Causal Clauses; **quod, quia, quoniam, and quandō, 49.** Cum-clauses: Temporal and Historical, **172**; Causal, **50**; Concessive, **61.**

28. 1. He said that he was an enemy to the Athenians, because, by their help^s, the Ionians had taken Sardis. 2. A little afterwards, he proclaims that, because the consuls are absent, ¹there can be no discussion about a settlement without them. 3. ²And when the consul observed this, he ordered³ the nearest lictor to cry out to Fabius, the father, ⁴to get down off his horse. 4. ⁵Shall I say that the sea has been closed to our allies through these years, when your armies have never crossed from Brundisium except in the ⁶depth of winter? 5. When the forces of the enemy are not far away, grazing is abandoned^s, agriculture is forsaken^s. 6. The knights, when there is need and some war has occurred, are all engaged in the war. 7. Scipio Nasica, though he was cousin of Tiberius Gracchus, preferring his country to his relationship, ⁷raised his right hand and cried out: "Let [those] who wish the republic to be safe^s, follow

27. ⁹ *Armed.* — ¹⁰ *Egomet.* — ¹¹ Rel. clause. — ¹² *Had been of hostile mind.*

28. ¹ *It cannot be treated.* — ² *Which when the consul observed.* — ³ *Iubeō.* — ⁴ Purpose clause. — ⁵ Deliberative question. — ⁶ Adj. and noun. — ⁷ Abl. abs.

me." 8. Why should he allow^s the soldiers to be wounded ^swho had deserved so well of him, especially^s when it was no less ^sa general's duty to conquer by strategy than by the sword?

Temporal Clauses: **postquam**, **ubi**, **ut**, etc., 174; **dum**, **dōnec**, and **quoad**, 173; **antequam** and **priusquam**, 171.

29. 1. After¹ Cæsar had discovered^s through scouts that the Suevi had retreated into the forests, he determined^s not to advance further. 2. As soon as the enemy caught sight of our horsemen, ²they made an attack^s, and quickly threw them³ into disorder. 3. ⁴As long as the general could keep his men near the bridge, he was involved in the same danger; [but] after¹ he observed that they were retreating all^s together, he withdrew to his own vessel. 4. While these things were being done by Cæsar, the Treviri, having collected a great number⁵ of infantry and cavalry, were preparing to attack^s Labienus. 5. The following day⁶ the soldiers rested till the general should examine the strength⁷ of the town. 6. From that time till ⁸they should come to the river, Cæsar promises ⁹to give [them] grain. 7. Wherefore ¹⁰I ask^s this of you, judges, before I begin^s to speak on the case itself. 8. They determine^s ¹¹to try^s ¹²every expedient sooner than have recourse to his advice. 9. You seem to me, Cæsar, to be afraid ¹³of being compelled to fight^s before you can¹⁴ deploy the rest^s of the fleet. 10. Horatius

28. ⁸ *Having deserved best.* — ⁹ Gen. of quality.

29. ¹ *Postquam.* The order is: *Cæsar, after he*, etc. — ² Instead of the two verbs, use abl. abs. and verb. — ³ *Ours.* — ⁴ Cf. the order in 1. — ⁵ *Cōpia* in plur. — ⁶ Not abl. — ⁷ Plur. of *vis*. — ⁸ Impersonal. — ⁹ Not pres. inf. — ¹⁰ In this order: *from you, judges, before . . . this I ask.* — ¹¹ Purpose clause. — ¹² *All [things].* — ¹³ *Lest you be compelled.* — ¹⁴ *Fut. perf.*

alone withstood the enemy's attack¹⁵ while¹⁶ the bridge was being broken down ¹⁷behind him.

Conditional Sentences: First Form, 53; Second Form, 54;
Third Form, 55.

30. 1. If I do not now satisfy¹ Cluentius, hereafter ²I shall have no opportunity ³to satisfy him. 2. If,—⁴and may Jupiter avert the omen,—you ruin Murena by your votes, whither will the poor⁵ [man] turn? 3. Wherefore if the ⁵magnificent games are a pleasure⁶ to the people, it is not to be wondered at that they benefited Lucius Murena ⁷in the eyes of the people. 4. If I should deny that I am affected with longing for Scipio,⁸ I should lie. 5. I am wont to praise the orations of Thucydides; [but] I could neither imitate [them], if I would,⁹ nor would I, perhaps, if I could. 6. For if causes could speak for themselves,¹⁰ no one would employ^s an advocate. 7. Pray what would you say, if you had conquered me? 8. If the wine had not failed, we should have said far more and [much] severer things. 9. If it were so^s, he ought¹¹ to have been accused under¹² this same law. 10. With such men *I* should have subdued the world in a short [time]. 11. If he could have guarded against these¹³ feuds, he would [now] be alive. 12. If some god should grant to me ¹⁴that from this age I might become a child again and cry in the cradle, I should strongly object.

29. ¹⁵ *Acies*. — ¹⁶ Implies intention. — ¹⁷ *From the rear*.

30. ¹ Fut. perf. — ² *Power will not be to me*. — ³ Gerund. — ⁴ *Which omen*, etc. — ⁵ *Magnificence of games is*. — ⁶ Not the pred. nom. — ⁷ *Apud*. — ⁸ Gen. — ⁹ *Should wish*. — ¹⁰ The emphasis is expressed by *ipse* agreeing with the subject. — ¹¹ Not subjunctive; see 105. — ¹² *By*. — ¹³ *Which*. — ¹⁴ Subst. clause of result.

Condition omitted, 57. Conclusion omitted; Comparative Particles, 58. Potential Subjunctive, 167.

31. 1. As you ¹could not find^s every tree in every field, so not every crime^s is produced² in every life. 2. I should not³ be so eager even³ for *that* praise as ⁴to wish it to be snatched away ⁵from others^s. 3. I, for my part, could wish ⁶that I might ⁷make the same boast as Cyrus. 4. But when the battle was finished, then, in truth, you might have seen what⁸ boldness and what⁸ determination were in Catiline's army. 5. If anything^s, or rather, whatever, comes⁹ into your mind, ¹⁰I should like to have you write. 6. Lucius Lucullus, who might, perhaps, ¹¹in some measure, have¹² relieved those disasters, being compelled by your order, disbanded a part of his forces. 7. As if, indeed, it were a matter for¹³ deliberation, and it were not necessary^s for us to unite¹⁴ with the Arverni. 8. Just as if they had conquered by valor, ¹⁵and no change of circumstances could happen^s, they publish the victory of that day throughout the world by reports and letters. 9. They seek these honors just¹⁶ as if they had lived honorably. 10. Since you write nothing to me ¹⁷on this matter, I shall regard [it] just as if you had written that there was nothing. 11. You could not easily ¹⁸have decided ¹⁹whether Hannibal was dearer to the general or to the army. 12. [Him] whom neither glory nor danger²⁰ rouses you ²¹will exhort in vain^s.

31. ¹ *Would not be able.* — ² *Born.* — ³ *Nō . . . quidem*; position of the emphatic word? — ⁴ *Not inf.* — ⁵ *See 70.* — ⁶ *To be able to make.* — ⁷ *Boast the same [thing] which.* — ⁸ *How great.* — ⁹ *Fut.* — ¹⁰ *I should wish [that] you write, 176.* — ¹¹ *From some part.* — ¹² *Might have = had been able.* — ¹³ *Of.* — ¹⁴ *Supply in Latin the word omitted in English.* — ¹⁵ *Nor any.* — ¹⁶ *Ita, first word.* — ¹⁷ *Put this phrase first.* — ¹⁸ *Imp. subj.* — ¹⁹ *For the indir. double quest., see 145, 146.* — ²⁰ *Plur.* — ²¹ *Pres. subj.*

Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse, 108. Sequence of Tenses, 160.

NOTE. — In dealing with indirect discourse always consider first what the direct form would be.

32. 1. He writes to Labienus ¹to come with his legion to the frontiers of the Nervii, ²if he can³ do [so] with⁴ advantage to the state. 2. Cicero replied that, if they ⁵were willing ⁶to lay down their arms, [they might] use¹ him as a mediator and send¹ ambassadors to Cæsar. 3. ⁷Do not think⁸, Pompey, that this is the army which conquered Gaul and Germany. 4. The Pythia directed them to take Miltiades [^ffor] their⁸ general, [saying that] if they ⁹should do *that*, their undertakings would be successful. 5. But most [men] think⁸ that, if Sulla had been willing ¹⁰to make a more vigorous pursuit, he might have finished the war on that day. 6. He said that this was the twentieth year ¹¹since the burning of the Capitol, which [year] the soothsayers had often declared¹² from the omens would be ¹³stained with the blood of civil war. 7. Catiline hoped shortly ¹⁴to have large forces, if his accomplices at Rome should accomplish their objects. 8. To this Quintus Marcius replied, if they wanted to ask⁸ anything⁸ of¹⁵ the Senate, let them ⁶lay down their arms and proceed as suppliants to Rome.

23. ¹ Imperative in direct disc. — ² Put this clause before “to come.” — ³ Imp. subj. in secondary sequence, while “come” follows the primary, both depending on the hist. pres. — ⁴ *In accordance with.* — ⁵ Pres. subj.; so “use” and “send.” — ⁶ *To depart from arms.* — ⁷ What is the most common way of expressing a prohibition? 131. — ⁸ Dat. — ⁹ Fut. perf. in direct disc. — ¹⁰ *To pursue more vigorously.* — ¹¹ *From the burned Capitol.* — ¹² *Replied.* — ¹³ *Bloody with.* — ¹⁴ What construction after “hope”? 114. — ¹⁵ *From.*

Informal Indirect Discourse, 107. Subjunctive by Attraction (Integral Part), 162. Concessive Clauses with *quamvis*, etc., 52. Clauses of Proviso w. *dum modo*, 73.

33. 1. But I do not grant this, that you should blame in others the same conduct¹ ²which you boast of in yourselves. 2. The leader of the Sabines gave Tarpeia the choice of a gift if she ³would conduct his army to the Capitol. She asked⁴ for what the Sabines wore on their left hands. 3. The angry king asked the augur ⁴whether what he himself should conceive in his mind⁵ could be done. 4. Whence⁵ it happened⁶ ⁶that ⁷as often as Alcibiades appeared in public,⁸ the eyes of all were turned to him. 5. He ordered his lieutenants ⁹to have built as many ships as they could in the winter. 6. The envoys proceeded to Rome in order that ¹⁰the stipulations made by Scipio might be confirmed by the authority of the fathers and the people. 7. But his enemies⁹ decided⁹ that ¹¹they must wait for the time when¹² he had departed. 8. Men⁸, however [much] they are in troubled circumstances, still sometimes unbend.¹³ 9. Flattery, however pernicious it is, can, nevertheless, hurt no one¹⁴ but him who welcomes it and is pleased with it. 10. They neglect all honorable things provided only that they obtain power⁸.

33. ¹ Rēs. — ² Put the rel. clause before the antecedent; thus, *of which things you boast . . . the same you blame.* — ³ Fut. perf. ind. in the direct disc. — ⁴ In this order, *whether (-ne) it could be done which*, etc. — ⁵ *Quā rē.* — ⁶ Subst. clause of result. — ⁷ *Alcibiades, as often as . . . turned the eyes of all to himself.* — ⁸ Acc. — ⁹ *Cūrō* w. gerundive. — ¹⁰ *What had been stipulated by S., that*, etc. — ¹¹ Use the *pass.* — ¹² *At which.* — ¹³ *Are relaxed in mind.* — ¹⁴ Case?

VOCABULARY TO PART III.

A

a (**an**), *usually not translated.*

abandon, *dēsistō*, 3, -*stitī*, -*stitus*,

v. abl.; *relinquō*, 3, -*liquī*,
-*lictus*.

able, *be*, *possum*, *posse*, *potuī*.

about, *adv.*, *circiter*; *ferē*.

above, *suprā*.

absent, *be*, *absum*, -*esse*, *āfuī*.

abundance, *cōpia*, -*ae*, *F.*

access, *aditus*, -*ūs*, *M.*

accomplice, *socius*, -*ī*, *M.*

accomplish, *perficiō*, 3, -*fēcī*,
-*fectus*; *patrō*, 1.

account, *on ac. of*, *propter*.

accusation, *crīmen*, -*inis*, *N.*

accuse, *accūsō*, 1.

acquit, *absolvō*, 3, -*vī*, -*solūtus*.

act, *faciō*, 3, *fēcī*, *factus*.

Actium, *Actium*, -*ī*, *N.*

address, *appellō*, 1.

admirable, *admīrābilis*, -*e*.

adopt, *suscipiō*, 3, -*cēpī*, -*ceptus*.

advance, *n.*, *prōcessiō*, -*ōnis*, *F.*

advance, *v.*, *prōgredior*, 3,
-*gressus*.

advantage, *ūtilitās*, -*ātis*, *F.*;

commodum, -*ī*, *N.*; *be of adv.*,
intersum, -*esse*, -*fuī*.

adversity, *adversae rēs*, -*ārum*
rērū, *F.*

advice, *cōnsilium*, -*ī*, *N.*; *senten-*
tia, -*ae*, *F.*

advise, *moneō*, 2.

advocate, *n.*, *ōrātor*, -*ōris*, *M.*

advocate, *v.*, *suādeō*, 2, -*sī*, -*sus*.

afar off, *procul*.

affability, *facilitās*, -*ātis*, *F.*

affair, *rēs*, *rei*, *F.*

affect, *moveō*, 2, *mōvī*, *mōtus*.

afraid, *be*, *vereor*, 2.

Afranius, *Afranius*, -*ī*, *M.*

Africa, *Āfrica*, -*ae*, *F.*

Africanus, *Āfricanus*, -*ī*, *M.*

after, *prep.* and *adv.*, *post*; *conj.*,
postquam.

afterwards, *post*.

again, *rūrsus*.

against, *adversus*; *contrā*.

age, *aetās*, -*ātis*, *F.*

ago, *abhinc*.

agriculture, *agricultūra*, -*ae*, *F.*

aid, *adiūmentum*, -*ī*, *N.*; [*ops*],
opis, *F.*

aim at, *agō*, 3, *ēgī*, *āctus*; *appetō*,
3, -*ivī*, -*ītus*.

Alban, *Albānus*, -*a*, -*um*.

Alcibiades, *Alcibiadēs*, -*is*, *M.*

Alesia, *Alesia*, -*ae*, *F.*

Alexander, *Alexander*, -*drī*, *M.*

alive, *be*, *vivō*, 3, *vixī*.

all, *omnis*, -*e*; *tōtus*, -*a*, -*um*; (*to-*
gether), *ūniversus*, -*a*, -*um*.

allow, *patior*, 3, *passus*.

ally, *socius*, -*ī*, *M.*

almost, *prope*.

alone, *ūnus*, -*a*, -*um*; *sōlus*, -*a*,
-*um*.

already, *iam*.

also, *quoque*.

although, cum; quamquam; etsi; *implied in participle.*
always, semper.
ambassador, lēgātus, -ī, M.
among, in; inter.
Ampius, Ampius, -ī, M.
ancestors, mājōrēs, -um, M.
anchor, ancora, -ae, F.
ancient, prīscus, -a, -um.
and, atque (ac); et; -que.
anew, dē integrō.
anger, īra, -ae, F.
angry, īrātus, -a, -um.
animal, bēstia, -ae, F.
another, alius, -a, -ud; alter, -era, -erum.
any, ūllus, -a, -um; quis, qua, quid; quisquam, —, quic-(quid-) quam; (whatever) quīvīs, quaevīs, quid-(quod-) vīs.
appear, prōdeō, -ire, -īī, -itus; (= seem), videor, 2, -vīsus.
appease, plācō, 1.
applauder, laudātor, -ōris, M.
appoint, creō, 1.
appreciate, diligō, 3, -lēxi, -lēctus.
approach, accēdō, 3, -cessi, -cessūrus; subeō, -īre, -īī, -itus.
Archias, Archiās, -ae, M.
Ardea, Ardea, -ae, F.
Argos, Argī, -ōrum, M.
arm, armō, 1.
arms, arma, -ōrum, N.
army, exercitus, -ūs, M.
arrival, adventus, -ūs, M.
arrive, perveniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventus.
Arverni, Arverni, -ōrum, M.
as, ut, prō; (*rel.*), quī, quae, quod; sometimes omitted in trans.; *as if, just as if*, quasi, proinde ac

sī; *as soon as*, ubi prīmum; *correl. to tam*, quam.
ashamed, be, pudet, 2, -uit(-itum).
Asia, Asia, -ae, F.
ask, rogō, 1; interrogō, 1; petō, 3, -ivī, -ītus; (**for**) postulō, 1.
assess, aestimō, 1.
assign, attribuō (*adt.*), 3, -uī, -ūtus.
associate, socius, -ī, M.
association, societās, -ātis, F.
at, ab; *locative*; *ablative.*
Athenian, Athēniēnsis, -is, M.
Athens, Athēnae, -ārum, F.
attack, *n.*, impetus, -ūs, M.
attack, *v.*, adorior, 4, -ortus.
Atticus, Atticus, -ī, M.
audacity, audācia, -ae, F.
augur, augur, -uris, M.
August, sextilis, -e (*adj.*).
auspices, auspicia, -ōrum, N.
auspicious, faustus, -a, -um.
authority, auctōritās, -ātis, F.
avenue, aditus, -ūs, M.
avert, avertō, 3, -tī, -sus.
aware, be, intellegō, 3, -ēxī, -ēctus.
away, be, absum, abesse, āfuī.

B

baggage, impedimenta, -ōrum, N.
barbarian, barbarus, -ī, M.
bare, nūdus, -a, -um.
base passion, turpitūdō, -inis, F.
battle, pūgna, -ae, F.; proelium, -ī, N.
battle array, aciēs, -ēī, F.
be, sum, esse, fuī; (**from, off**), absum, abesse, āfuī.
bear, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus.
because, quod; quia.

become a child again, repuerāscō, 3, —, —.
 before, *prep.* and *adv.*, ante; *conj.*, antequam; priusquam.
 begin, ineō, -īre, -īi, -itus; incipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptus; ordior, 4, ōrsus.
 beginning, initium, -ī, N.
 behind, pōne.
 benefit, *n.*, ēmolumentum, -ī, N.
 benefit, *v.*, prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī,
 beset, circumveniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventus.
 besiege, oppugnō, 1.
 best, *adv.*, optimē.
 betake one's self, sē cōferre.
 better, iūstior, -ōris.
 beware, caveō, 2, cāvī, cautus.
 bind, vinciō, 4, -nxī, -nctus; iungō, 3, -nxī, -nctus.
 blame, reprehendō, 3, -dī, -sus.
 blameless, innocēns, -ntis.
 blessing, commodum, -ī, N.
 blind, caecus, -a, -um.
 blood, sanguis, -inis, M.
 bloody, cruentus, -a, -um.
 boast, glōrior, 1.
 body, corpus, -oris, N.
 boldness, audācia, -ae, F.
 born, be, nāscor, 3, nātus.
 both, uterque, utraque, utrumque.
 both . . . and, et . . . et.
 boundaries, finēs, -ium, M.
 boy, puer, -ī, M.
 brave, fortis, e.
 break; break down, interrumpō, 3, -rūpī, -ruptus; (out) ērumpō.
 breastplate, lōrīca, -ae, F.
 breath, spīritus, -ūs, M.
 bridge, pōns, pontis, M.

bring upon, inferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus.
 brother, frāter, -tris, M.
 Brundisium, Brundisium, -ī, N.
 Brutus, Brūtus, -ī, M.
 Bucephalē, Būcephale, -ēs, F.
 build, faciō, 3, fēcī, factus; mūniō, 4; aedificō, 1; (up) exstruō, 3, -ūxī, -ūctus.
 burn, incendō, 3, -dī, -sus.
 bury, sepeliō, 4, -īvī, -pultus.
 business, negōtium, -ī, N.
 but, at; sed; autem; vērō; (= *except*) nisi; praeter; *but if*, quod sī.
 by, ā (ab); *ablative*.
 by and by, aliquandō.

C

Cæsar, Caesar, -āris, M.
 calamity, calamitās, -ātis, F.
 call, appellō, 1; vocō, 1.
 camp, castra, -ōrum, N.
 can, possum, posse, potuī; queō, quīre, quīvī, quitus.
 Cannæ, at, Cannēnsis, -e, (*adj.*).
 cannot, nequeō, 4, -īvī, —.
 Canusium, Canusium, -ī, N.
 Capitol, Capitōlium, -ī, N.
 care, take, cūrō, 1.
 carefully, diligenter; attentē.
 carry on war, bellō, 1.
 Carthage, Carthāgō, -inis, F.
 Carthaginian, Carthāginiēnsis, -is, M.; Poenus, -ī, M.
 case, causa, -ae, F.
 cast, coniciō, 3, -iēcī, -iectus; (out) ēiciō.
 catch sight of, cōspiciō, 3, -spēxī, -spectus.

- Catiline**, *Catilīna*, -ae, M.
Cato, *Catō*, -ōnis, M.
Catulus, *Catulus*, -ī, M.
cause, *causa*, -ae, F.
cavalry, *equitātus*, -ūs, M.
Ceres, *Cerēs*, -eris, F.
certainly, *certē*.
Cethegus, *Cethēgus*, -ī, M.
chain, *vinculum*, -ī, N.
chance, *cāsus*, -ūs, M.
change, *commūtātiō*, -ōnis, F.
characteristic, *proprius*, -a, -um.
charge, *mandō*, 1; *īnsimulō*, 1.
charioteer, *essedārius*, -ī, M.
check, *teneō*, 2, -ūi, -tus.
children, *liberī*, -ōrum, M.; *puerī*, -ōrum, M.
choice, *optiō*, -ōnis, F.
Cicero, *Cicerō*, -ōnis, M.
Cimbri, *Cimbrī*, ōrum, M.
circumstance, *rēs*, *reī*, F.
citadel, *arx*, *arcis*, F.
citizen, *cīvis*, -is, C.
city, *urbs*, -is, F.
civil, *cīvilis*, -e.
clemency, *clēmēntia*, -ae, F.
Cleomenes, *Cleomenēs*, -is, M.
Clodius, *Clōdius*, -ī, M.
close, *claudō*, 3, -sī, -sus.
cloth-factory, *textrīnum*, -ī, N.
Cluentius, *Cluentius*, -ī, M.
Cn., abbreviation of *Gnæus*.
cohort, *cohors*, -rtis, F.
colleague, *collēga*, -ae, M.
collect, *cōgō*, 3, -cōgī, -āctus.
come, *veniō*, 4, *vēnī*, *ventus*; (**forward**) *prōcēdō*, 3, -cessī, —; *accēdō*, 3, -cessī, -cessūrus; (**out**) *ēgredior*, 3, *ēgressus*.
comfort, *solacium*, -ī, N.
command, *imperium*, -ī, N.
commander, *imperātor*, -ōris, M.; *praetor*, -ōris, M.
commendation, *praedicātiō*, -ōnis, F.
commit, *committō*, 3, -mīsī, *missus*.
Commius, *Commius*, -ī, M.
common people, *plēbs*, -is, F.
company, *comitātus*, -ūs, M.
compare, *comparō*, 1.
compel, *cōgō*, 3, *coēgī*, *coāctus*.
complete, *cōnficiō*, 3, -fēcī, -fectus.
compose, *compōnō*, 3, -posuī, -positus.
conceal, *cēlō*, 1.
conceive, *concipiō*, 3, -cēpī, -ceptus.
concerning, *dē*.
concerns, *it*, *interest*, -esse, -fuit; *rēfert*, -ferre, -tulit.
condemn, *damnō*, 1.
condition, *lēx*, *lēgis*, F.
conduct, *perducō*, 3, -dūxī, -ductus.
confess, *fateor*, 2, *fassus*.
confirm, *cōnfirmō*, 1.
confiscate, *pūblicō*, 1.
congratulate, *grātulor*, 1.
conquer, *vincō*, 3, *vīcī*, *vīctus*; *dēvincō*; *superō*, 1.
consciousness, *cōnscientia*, -ae, F.
conscript, *cōnscriptus*, -a, -um.
consecrate, *cōnstituō*, 3, -uī, -ūtus.
consider, *cōnsiderō*, 1.
conspiracy, *coniurātiō*, -ōnis, F.
consul, *cōnsul*, -is, M.
consulship, *cōnsulātus*, -ūs, M.
contend, *contendō*, 3, -dī, -tus; *dēcērtō*, 1.
content, *contentus*, -a, -um.
contention, *contentiō*, -ōnis, F.

contrary to, *contrā*.
 copiousness, *cōpia*, -ae, F.
 Corinth, *Corinthus*, -ī, F.
 country, *patria*, -ae, F.; *rūs*, *rūris*, N.
 courage, *animus*, -ī, M.
 course, *cursus*, -ūs, M.
 cousin, *cōnsōbrīnus*, -ī, M.
 cradle, *cūnae*, -ārum, F.
 craft, *astūtia*, -ae, F.
 create, *creō*, 1.
 crime, *facinus*, -oris, N.; *scelus*, -eris, N.
 cross, *trānseō*, 4; -ī, -itus; *trā-ic-iō*, 3, -īcī, -iectus; *trānsmittō*, 3, -mīsī, -missus.
 crowd, *frequentia*, -ae, F.
 crush, *opprimō*, 3, -pressī, -pressus.
 cry out, *inclāmō*, 1; *prōclāmō*, 1; (= *weep*) *vāgiō*, 4.
 cultivate, *colō*, 3, -uī, cultus.
 cure, *medeor*, 2, —.
 custom, *īnstitūtum*, -ī, N.
 Cyrus, *Cyrus*, -ī, M.

D

danger, *perīculum*, -ī, N.
 dare, *audeō*, 2, ausus.
 dart, *trāgula*, -ae, F.
 Datis, *Datis*, -is, M.
 daughter, *little*, *filiola*, -ae, F.
 dawn, *prīma lūx*, *prīmae lūcis*, F.
 day, *diēs*, -ēī, M. and F.; *the day before*, *prīdiē*.
 daybreak, *prīma lūx*, *prīmae lūcis*, F.
 deaf, *surdus*, -a, -um.
 dear, *cārus*, -a, -um.
 death, *mors*, *mortis*, F.
 debt, *aes*, (*aeris*) *aliēnum* (-ī), N.

December, *December*, -bris, -bre (*adj.*).
 decide, *cōstituō*, 3, -uī, -ūtus; *dēcernō*, 3, -crēvī, -crētus; *discernō*.
 Decimus, *Decimus*, -ī, M.
 decision, *dēliberātiō*, -ōnis, F.
 declare, *indīcō*, 3, -dīxī, -dictus.
 deed, *rēs*, *reī*, F.
 deem, *exīstimō*, 1.
 defeat, *n.*, *cladēs*, -is, F.
 defeat, *v.*, *pellō*, 3, *pepulī*, *pulsus*.
 defend, *dēfendō*, 3, -dī, -sus.
 deliberate, *cōsulō*, 3, -uī, -tus.
 deliberation, *cōsiliūm*, -ī, N.
 deliver, *trādō*, 3, -didī, -ditus.
 deliverance, *salūs*, -ūtis, F.
 Delphi, *Delphī*, -ōrum, M.
 demand, *efflāgitō*, 1; (*back*), *repscō*, 3, —, —
 deny, *negō*, 1.
 depart, *discēdō*, 3, -cessī, -cessus; *excēdō*; *exeō*, -īre, -ī, -itus.
 departure, *discessus*, -ūs, M.
 depend upon, *cōsistō*, 3, -stitī, -stitus.
 deploy, *explicō*, -āre, -āvī and -uī, -ātus or -itus.
 depth of winter, *summa hiems*, *summae hiemis*, F.
 deserve, *mereō*, 2.
 deserving, *dīgnus*, -a, -um.
 desire, *cupiō*, 3, -īvī, -ītus.
 desirous, *cupidus*, -a, -um.
 destroy, *deleō*, 2, -ēvī, -ētus.
 detain, *retineō*, 2, -uī, -tentus.
 determination, *vīs animī*.
 determine, *statuō*, 3, -uī, -ūtus; *cōstituō*, 3, -uī, -ūtus.
 devote, *incumbō*, 3, -cubū, -cubitus; *trānsmittō*, 3, -mīsī, -missus.

devotion, pietās, -ātis, F.
die, morior, 3 (4), mortuus.
difficult, difficilis, -e.
direct, praecipio, 3, -cēpī, -ceptus.
disaster, calamitās, -ātis, F.; incommodum, -ī, N.
disband, dēmittō, 3, -mīsī, -missus.
discern, cernō, 3, crēvī, crētus.
discord, discordia, -ae, F.
discourse, sermō, -ōnis, M.
discover, comperiō, 4, -ī, -tus.
discuss, disserō, 3, -uī, -tus.
disgrace, dēdecus, -oris, N.
disgusted, be, taedet, 2, —, —.
dishonest, perfidus, -a, -um.
dislodge, dēiciō, 3, -iēcī, -iectus.
disorder, throw into, perturbō, 1.
displeasure, offēnsa, -ae, F.
dissemble, dissimulō, 1.
dissimilar, dissimilis, -e.
distance, at a, procul.
distant, be, absum, -esse, āfuī.
distinguished, summus, -a, -um.
distribute, dīvidō, 3, -vīsī, -vīsus.
ditch, fossa, -ae, F.
divide, dīvidō, 3, -vīsī, -vīsus.
do, agō, 3, ēgī, āctus; faciō, 3, fēcī, factus; gerō, 3, gessī, gestus.
Dolabella, Dolābella, -ae, M.
doubt, dubitō, 1.
doubtful, dubius, -a, -um.
draw, dūcō, 3; (up) scribō, 3, scripsī, scriptus.
dream, n., somnium, -ī, N.
dream, v., somniō, 1.
 dwell, habitō, 1.
Dyrrachium, Dyrrachium, -ī, N.

E

each, quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque).
eager, cupidus, -a, -um; *be eager*, cupiō, 3, -īvī, -ītus.
early, mātūrus, -a, -um.
earth, terra, -ae, F.
easily, facile.
edict, ēdictum, -ī, N.
eight, octō.
eighth, octāvus, -a, -um.
eighty, octōgintā.
either . . . or, aut . . . aut; vel . . . vel.
elder, senior, -ōris; māior (-ōris), nātū.
elect, creō, 1.
eloquence, orātiō, -ōnis, F.
else (= *other*), alius, -a, -ud.
emperor, imperātor, -ōris, M.
employ, adhibeō, 2; admoveō, 2, -mōvī, -mōtus.
encircle, cingō, 3, -xī, cinctus.
encompass, stīpō, 1.
encourage, cohortor, 1.
end, exitus, -us, M.; (of) extrēmus, -a, -um.
endure, sustineō, 2, -uī, -tentus.
enemy, hostis, -is, C.; inimicus, -ī, M.
engage, cōnflīgō, 3.
engaged, be, versor, 1.
enjoy, fruor, 3, frūctus.
enough, satis.
envoy, lēgātus, -ī, M.
envy, n., invidia, -ae, F.
envy, v., invideō, 2, -vīdī, -vīsus.
equal, pār, paris.
equestrian, equester, -tris, -tre.
err, errō, 1; peccō, 1.

error, error, -ōris, M.
 escort, dēdūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductus.
 especially, praesertim.
 estrange, abaliēnō, 1.
 even, etiam; *not even*, nē . . .
 quidem.
 ever, umquam.
 every, omnis, -e.
 evident, it is, cōnstat, 1, -stitit.
 examine, īnspiciō, 3, -spēxī,
 -spectus.
 excellent, optimus, -a, -um;
 egregius, -a, -um.
 except, nisi.
 ex-consul, cōnsulāris, -is, M.
 exhort, hortor, 1.
 exigencies, tempora, -um, N.
 exile, exsilium, -ī, N.
 experienced, sciēns, -ntis.
 explanation, satisfactiō, -ōnis, F.
 exterminate, exterminō, 1.
 extraordinary, extraordinārius,
 -a, -um.
 eye, oculus, -ī, M.

F

Fabius, Fabius, -ī, M.
 fail, dēficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectus.
 faithful, fidēlis, -e; fidus, -a, -um.
 fall, cadō, 3, cecidī, casūrus; con-
 cidō, 3, -cidī.
 false, falsus, -a, -um.
 falsehood, mendācium, -ī, N.
 fame, glōria, -ae, F.
 famous, the, ille, -a, -ud.
 far, *adv.*, longē.
 father, pater, -tris, M.; parēns,
 -ntis, M.
 father's, paternus, -a, -um.
 fault, vitium, -ī, N.

favor, faveō, 2, fāvī, fautūrus.
 favorable, aequus, -a, -um.
 fear, *n.*, metus, -ūs, M.; pavor,
 -ōris, M.; timor, -ōris, M.
 fear, *v.*, vereor, 2; timeō, 2, timuī.
 fellow-citizens, cīvēs, -ium, C.
 feud, inimicitia, -ae, F.
 few, paucī, -ae, -a.
 field, ager, -grī, M.; campus, -ī, M.;
 in the field, militiae.
 fifteen, quīdecim.
 fifth, quīntus, -a, -um.
 fifty, quīnquāgintā.
 fight, *n.*, certāmen, -inis, N.
 fight, *v.*, pūgnō, 1; dimicō, 1; (it
 out) dēcernō, 3, -crēvī, -crētus.
 find, invenīō, 4, -vēnī, -ventus; re-
 periō, 4, -ī, -tus; (**guilty**) con-
 demnō, 1.
 fine, līs, lītis, F.
 finish, cōnficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectus;
 fīniō, 4.
 fire, *n.*, ignis, -is, M.; incendium,
 -ī, N.
 fire, *v.*, *set fire to*, *set on fire*, in-
 cendō, 3, -dī, -sus.
 first, prīmus, -a, -um; prīnceps,
 -ipsis; prīstinus, -a, -um. (**of the**
 month) Kalendae, ārum, F.; *in*
 the first place, prīmum.
 fixed, certus, -a, -um.
 flatterer, adūlātor, -ōris, M.
 flattery, adsentātiō, -ōnis, F.
 flee, fugiō, 3, fūgī; profugiō; (*for*
 refuge), perfugiō.
 fleet, classis, -is, F.
 follow, sequor, 3, -cūtus; īnsequor.
 folly, stultitia, -ae, F.
 food, cibus, -ī, M.
 fool, īnsipiēns, -ntis, M.
 foot, pēs, pedis, M.

for, *conj.*, nam; enim (*postpositive*); *prep.* in; prō; *dative*.
 forbid, prohibeō, 2, -uī, -itus.
 force, vigor, -ōris, M.
 forces, cōpiæ, -ārum, F.; militēs, -um, M.
 forest, silva, -ae, F.
 foretell, praedicō, 3, -dixī, -dictus.
 forget, obliviscor, 3, oblitus.
 forgetful, oblitus, -a, -um.
 form, cōstituō, 3, -uī, -ūtus.
 former, superior, -us; prīstinus, -a, -um; *the former*, ille, -a, -ud.
 formerly, antea; ōlim.
 forsake, dēserō, 3, -uī, -rtus.
 forthwith, prōtinus.
 fortune, fōrtūna, -ae, F.
 fortunate, fōrtunātus, -a, -um; bonus, -a, -um.
 forum, forum, -ī, N.
 found, condō, 3, -didī, -ditus.
 fourteen, quattuordecim.
 fourteenth, quartus decimus, -a, -um.
 fourth, quartus, -a, -um.
 fraud, fraus, fraudis, F.
 free, *adj.*, liber, -era, -erum.
 free, *v.*, liberō, 1.
 friend, amīcus, -ī, M.
 friendship, amīcītia, -ae, F.
 fresh, recēns, -ntis.
 from, ā (ab); ē (ex).
 front, *in front of*, adversus, -a, -um.
 frontiers, finēs, -ium, M.
 fruits, frūgēs, -um, F.
 full, plēnus, -a, -um.
 funds, pecūniā, -ae, F.
 further, longius; *adj.*, longior, furthermore, porrō. [-ōris].
 future, the, reliqua, -ōrum, N.

G

Gaius, Gāius, -ī, M.
 gallant, fortis, -e.
 game, lūdus, -ī, M.
 garrison, praesidium, -ī, N.
 gate, porta, -ae, F.
 Gaul, Gallia, -ae, F.
 Gauls, Gallī, -ōrum, M.
 general, imperātor, -ōris, M.; dux, ducis, M.; praefectus, -ī, M.
 generosity, liberālītās, -ātis, F.
 genius, ingenium, -ī, N.
 gentle, clēmēns, -ntis.
 gentleman, vir, virī, M.
 Germans, Germānī, -ōrum, M.
 Germany, Germānia, -ae, F.
 get down, dēscendō, 3, -dī, -sus.
 gift, dōnum, -ī, N.; mūnus, -eris, N.
 gilded, inaurātus, -a, -um.
 gird, accingō, 3, -nxī, -nctus.
 give, dō, dare, dedī, datus.
 glory, glōria, -ae, F.; laus, laudis, F.
 Gnæus, Gnaeus, -ī, M.
 go, eō, ire, īvī, itūrus; proficīscor, 3, -fectus; (out) exeō; discēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessus; (before) anteeō.
 god, deus, -ī, M.
 good, bonus, -a, -um.
 good-bye, valē, valēte.
 goods, bona, -ōrum, N.
 Gracchus, Gracchus, -ī, M.
 grain, frūmentum, -ī, N.
 grandfather, avus, -ī, M.
 grant, dō, dare, dedī, datus; concēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessus; largior, 4.
 grasp, teneō, 2, -uī, -tus.
 grazing, pecuāria, -ae, F.
 great, māgnus, -a, -um; *how great*, quantus, -a, -um; *so great*, tantus, -a, -um; *very great, greatest*, summus, -a, -um.

greatness, amplitūdō, -inis, F.
 Greece, Graecia, -ae, F.
 greed, cupiditās, -ātis, F.
 Greek, Graecus, -a, -um.
 grievance, dolor, -ōris, M.
 grieve, doleō, 2, -uī, -itūrus.
 grove, lūcus, -ī, M.
 guard against, caveō, 2, cāvī,
 cautus.
 guilt, culpa, -ae, F.; scelus, -eris, N.

H

hand, manus, -ūs, F.
 Hannibal, Hannibal, -alis, M.
 happen, fiō, fierī, factus; accidō,
 3, -dī; contingō, 3, -tigī, -tāctus.
 happily, beātē.
 happy, beātus, -a, -um; fēlix, -icis.
 harass, agitō, 1.
 hasten, properō, 1; contendō, 3,
 -dī, -tus; (through) percurrō,
 3, -cucurrī or -currī, -cursus.
 have, habeō, 2.
 he, is; *often omitted in translation.*
 head, caput, -itis, N.
 heal, sārō, 1.
 hear, audiō, 4.
 help, auxilium, -ī, N.
 herald, praecō, -ōnis, M.
 hereafter, postea.
 hesitate, dubitō, 1.
 high, altus, -a, -um.
 highest, summus, -a, -um.
 hill, collis, -is, M.
 himself, suī; ipse.
 his, suus, -a, -um; eius.
 hitherto, adhūc.
 hold, habeō, 2; teneō, 2, -uī, tentus.
 home, domus, -ūs (-ī), F.
 Homer, Homērus, -ī, M.

honor, n., honor, -ōris, M.; fidēs,
 -eī, F.
 honor, v., decorō, 1.
 honorable, honestus, -a, -um.
 honorably, honestē.
 hope, n., spēs, spēī, F.
 hope, hope for, v., spērō, 1.
 Horatius, Horātius, -ī, M.
 horse, equus, -ī, M.
 horseman, eques, -itis, M.
 hostile, inimicus, -a, -um.
 house, domus, -ūs (-ī), F.
 how, quam; (long) quō usque;
 (much, great) quantus, -a, -um.
 however, quamvis.
 hundred, centum.
 hunger, famēs, -is, F.
 hurt, noceō, 2, -uī, -itūrus.
 husband, marītus, -ī, M.; vir,
 virī, M.

I

I, ego, meī; (for my part), equi-
 dem.
 Ides, Idūs, -uum, F.
 idle, ignāvus, -a, -um.
 if, sī; (not) nisi.
 ignorant, imperītus, -a, -um.
 illustrious, clārus, -a, -um.
 imitate, imitor, 1.
 imitation, imitātiō, -ōnis, F.
 immediately, statim.
 impel, urgeō, 2, urī.
 improperly, prāvē.
 in, in.
 incautiously, incautē,
 inclination, voluntās, -ātis, F.
 increase, augeō, 2, auxī, auctus.
 incredible, incredibilis, -e.
 indeed, vērō (*postpositive*).
 India, India, -ae, F.

indication, significātiō, -ōnis, F.
 indignation, indignātiō, -ōnis, F.
 individuals, singulī, -ōrum, M.
 indulgence, with, clēmenter.
 industrious, diligēns, -ntis.
 Indutiomarus, Indutiomarus, -ī,
 infamy, infāmia, -ae, F. [M.
 infantry, peditātus, -ūs, M.
 inform, certiōrem faciō (3, fēcī,
 factus).
 inhabit, incolō, 3, -uī, -cultus.
 injunction, praeceptum, -ī, N.
 injury, iniuria, -ae, F.
 injustice, iniūstītia, -ae, F.; inī-
 quitās, -ātis, F.
 innumerable, innumerābilis, -e.
 inquire, percontor, 1; scītor, 1.
 insult, iniūria, -ae, F.
 integrity, innocentia, -ae, F.
 intemperance, intemperantia,
 -ae, F.
 intention, īnstītūtum, -ī, N.
 interest, *it is for one's interest*,
 interest, -esse, -iuit.
 intestine, intestinus, -a, -um.
 intimate, familiāris, -e.
 into, in.
 inventress, inventrīx, -īcis, F.
 investigation, quaestiō, -ōnis, F.
 involved, be, versor, 1.
 Ionians, Iōnēs, -um, M.
 island, īnsula, -ae, F.
 issue, cāsus, -ūs, M.
 it, is, ea, id; *poss. pron.*, suus, -a,
 -um; *of ten omitted in translation.*
 Italy, Italia, -ae, F.
 itself. See self.

J

January, Iānuārius, -a, -um (*adj.*).
 judge, n., iūdex, -icis, M.

judge, *v.*, iūdicō, 1.
 judgment, iūdicium, -ī, N.; sen-
 tentia, -ae, F.
 June, Iūnius, -a, -um (*adj.*).
 Jupiter, Iuppiter, Iovis, M.
 just, vērus, -a, -um; *just . . . as*,
 sic (ita) . . . ut.
 justice, iūstītia, -ae, F.

K

Kalends, Kalendae, -ārum, F.
 keep, contineō, 2, -uī, -tentus;
 (from) prohibeō, 2.
 kill, occidō, 3, -cidī, -cīsus; necō, 1.
 kind, *a kind of*, quīdam, quaedam,
 quoddam; *of this kind*, hūius
 modī.
 kindness, mānsuētūdō, -inis, F.
 king, rēx, rēgis, M.
 kingdom, rēgnum, -ī, N.
 knight, eques, -itis, M.
 know, intellegō, 3; sciō, 4; (not)
 nēsciō, 4.

L

Labienus, Labienus, -ī, M.
 labor, n., labor, -ōris, M.
 labor, *v.*, labōrō, 1; (for) serviō, 4.
 Lacedæmon, Lacedaemōn, -onis,
 F.
 lack, n., inopia, -ae, F.
 lack, *v.*, careō, 2, -uī, -itūrus; egeō,
 2, -uī.
 land, terra, -ae, F.
 language, lingua, -ae, F.
 Laodicea, Lāodicēa, -ae, F.
 large, māgnus, -a, -um.
 last, postrēmus, -a, -um.
 late, *adv.*, sērō.

Latin, Latinus, -a, -um.
 latter, hīc, haec, hōc.
 laughter, rīsus, ūs, M.
 law, lēx, lēgis, F.
 lay waste, dēpopulor, 1.
 lead, lead over, trādūcō, 3; (out)
 ēdūcō, 3.
 leader, dux, ducis, M.; prīnceps,
 -ipis, M.
 learn, cōgnōscō, 3, -nōvī, -nitus.
 learning, doctrīna, -ae, F.
 left, sinister, -tra, -trum.
 legal, lēgitimus, -a, -um.
 legion, legiō, -ōnis, F.
 Lentulus, Lentulus, -ī, M.
 less, *adv.*, minus.
 lest, nē.
 let, *sign of hort. subjunc.*
 letter, litterae, -ārum, F.; epistola,
 -ae, F.
 Leucas, Leucas, -adis, F.
 levy, dēlēctus, -ūs, M.
 liberty, libērtās, -ātis, F.
 lictor, lictor, -ōris, M.
 lie, mentior, 4.
 lieutenant, lēgātūs, -ī, M.
 life, vīta, -ae, F.; anima, -ae, F.
 Ligarius, Ligārius, -ī, M.
 Liger, Liger, -eris, M.
 light, lūx, lūcis, F.
 like, similis, -e.
 line of battle, aciēs, -ēī, F.
 line of march, āgmen, -inis, N.
 Lingones, Lingonēs, -um, M.
 literature, litterae, -ārum, F.
 little, *adj.*, parvus, -a, -um.
 little, *adv.*, paulō.
 live, vīvō, 3, vīxī; habitō, 1.
 Livius, Livius, -ī, M.; *of Livius*,
 Livianus, -a, -um.
 long, diū; *as long as, dum*; quoad.

long continued, diūturnus, -a,
 -um.
 longer, no, nōn iam.
 longing, dēsiderium, -ī, N.
 lose, āmittō, 3, -mīsī, -missus.
 loud (voice), māgnus, -a, -um.
 love, amō, 1; diligo, 3, -lēxī,
 -lēctus.
 lowliness, humilitās, -ātis, F.
 lowly, humilis, -e.
 Lucius, Lucius, -ī, M.
 Lucretia, Lucretia, -ae, F.
 Lucullus, Lucullus, -ī, M.

M

magistrate, magistrātus, -ūs, M.
 magnificence, māgnificentia, -ae,
 F.
 Maia, Maia, -ae, F.
 maiden, virgō, -inis, F.
 make, faciō, 3, fēcī, factus.
 man, homō, -inis, C.; vir, virī, M.
 Manilian, Manilius, -a, -um.
 Manlius, Manlius, -ī, M.
 many, multī, -ae, -a; *as many as*
possible, quam plūrimī, -ae, -a
 (possum).
 Marathon, Marathōn, -ōnis, F.
 Marcius, Mārcius, -ī, M.
 Marcus, Mārcus, -ī, M.
 Marius, Marius, -ī, M.
 Massilia, Massilia, -ae, F.
 mast, mālus, -ī, M.
 matter, rēs, reī, F.
 May, of, Māius, -a, -um.
 may, licet, 2, -uit (-itum); *optative*
subjunc.
 means, opera, -ae, F.; rēs famili-
 ārēs, rērum familiārium.
 meanwhile, intereā; interim.

Medea, Mēdēa, -ae, F.
 mediator, adiutor, -ōris, M.
 meet, *go to meet*, obviam eō, -īre, -ivī, -itūrus.
 mention, memorō, 1.
 merchant, mercator, -ōris, M.
 Mercury, Mercurius, -ī, M.
 message, nūntius, -ī, M.
 middle, medius, -a, -um.
 midsummer, media aestās, mediae aestātis, F.
 might, possum, posse, potuī.
 mile, mille passuum.
 Milo, Mīlō, -ōnis, M.
 Miltiades, Miltiadēs, -is, M.
 mind, animus, -ī, M.; mēns, -ntis, F.
 mindful, memor, -oris.
 miserable, miser, -era, -erum.
 Mithridates, Mithra(i)dātēs, -is,
 moderate, temperāns, -ntis. [M.
 moderation, modus, -ī, M.
 money, pecūnia, -ae, F.
 monument, monumentum, -ī, N.
 more, plūs, plūris; *adv.*, plūs; magis.
 most, *superl.*; *most*, *most of*, plēriūque, plēraeque, plēraque.
 mother, māter, -tris, F.
 mound, agger, -eris, M.
 mountain, mōns, montis, M.
 much, *adj.*, multus, -a, -um; *so much*, tantus, -a, -um; *as much* . . . *as*, tantus . . . quantus.
 much, *adv.*, multō.
 Mummius, Mummius, -ī, M.
 Murena, Mūrēna, -ae, M.
 my, meus, -a, -um.

N

name, nōmen, -inis, N.
 Nasica, Nāsīca, -ae, M.

natural, nātūrālis, -e.
 nature, nātūra, -ae, F.
 near, ad; prope.
 nearer, *adv.*, propius.
 nearest, proximus, -a, -um.
 necessary, necesse.
 need, opus, N., *indecl.*; ūsus, -ūs, M.
 neglect, neglegō, 3, -lēxī, -lēctus.
 neither, neque (nec).
 Nervii, Nervīi, -ōrum, M.
 never, numquam.
 nevertheless, tamen.
 new, novus, -a, -um.
 next, tum.
 Nicaea, Nīcaea, -ae, F.
 night, nox, noctis, F.; (*as adj.*) nocturnus, -a, -um.
 nine, novem.
 no, nūllus, -a, -um; (**one**) nēmō [-inis], C.; nūllus; *adv.* nōn.
 nobility, nōbilitās, -ātis, F.
 noble, nōbilis, -e; pulcher, -chra, -chrum.
 none, nūllus, -a, -um.
 Nones, Nōnae, -ārum, F.
 nor, and not, neque (nec); nēve (neu).
 not, nōn; haud; nē; *not even*, nē . . . quidem.
 nothing, nihil, N., *indecl.*
 November, of, Novembris, -e.
 now, nunc; iam.
 Numa, Numa, -ae, M.
 Numantia, Numantia, -ae, F.
 number, numerus, -ī, M.

O

O, *interj.*, Ō.
 oath, iūsiūrandum, iūrisiūrandī, N.

obey, p̄areō, 2, -uī.
 ob'ject, inceptum, -ī, N.
 object', obtrectō, 1; recūsō, 1.
 observe, animadvertō, 3, -tī, -sus.
 obtain, cōsequor, 3, -cūtus; nanciscor, 3, nactus (nactus).
 occur, incidō, 3, -cidī.
 of, ā (ab); dē; ē (ex); *genitive*.
 offer, faciō, 3, fēcī, factus; īferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus; prōpōnō, 3, -posuī, positus.
 office, magistrātus, -ūs, M.
 often, saepe; *as often as*, quotiēscumque.
 old, vetus, -eris; (age) senectūs, -ūtis, F.
 omen, ōmen, -inis, N.; prōdigium, -ī, N.
 on, in; dē; *abl*.
 once, quondam; semel.
 one, ūnus, -a, -um; *one . . . the other*, alter . . . alter; *one . . . another*, alius . . . alius.
 only, *adj.*, ūnicus, -a, -um; *not only . . . but also*, nōn modo (solum) . . . sed etiam (vērūm).
 open, aperiō, 4, -uī, -tus; *be open*, pateō, 2, -uī.
 opinion, sententia, -ae, F.
 opportunity, occāsio, -ōnis, F.; opportunitās, -ātis, F.; potestās, -ātis, F.
 oppose, resistō, 3, -stīti.
 opposite, contrārius, -a, -um.
 oppress, opprimō, 3, -pressī, -pressus.
 opulent, opulentus, -a, -um.
 or, aut; vel; (*in double quest.*) an; (not) annōn; necne.
 oracle, ōrāculum, -ī, N.
 oration, ōrātiō, -ōnis, F.

ordain, sancio, 4, s̄anxī, s̄anctus.
 order, *n.*, ōrdō, -inis, M.; *by order*, iūssū.
 order, *v.*, iubeō, 2, iūssi, iūssus; imperō, 1; *in order to*, ut.
 other, alius, -a, -ud; alter, -era, -erum; cēteri, -ae, -a.
 ought, dēbeō, 2; oportet, 2, -uit; *second periph. conj.*
 our, noster, -tra, -trum.
 outcome, ēventum, -ī, N.
 over, in.
 overcome, superō, 1; vincō, 3, vicī, victus.
 overthrow, ēvertō, 3, -tī, -sus; prōfligō, 1.
 owing to, be, stāre per.
 own, his, their, suus, -a, -um.

P

pain, dolor, -ōris, M.
 Pansa, Pānsa, -ae, M.
 Papirius, Papīrius, -ī, M.
 pardon, condōnō, 1.
 parricide, parricidium, -ī, N.
 part, pars, partis, F.
 party, pars, partis, F.
 pass, *n.*, saltus, -ūs, M.
 pass (*a law*), ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus.
 past, the, praeterita, -ōrum, N.
 path, sēmita, -ae, F.
 patience, patientia, -ae, F.
 pay, persolvō, 3, -vī, -ūtus.
 peace, pāx, pācis, F.
 peculiar, proprius, -a, -um.
 Peloponnesian, Peloponnēsius, -a, -um.
 penalty, poena, -ae, F.
 people, populus, -ī, M.

- perceive clearly, perspicio, 3, -spēxī, -spēctus.
 perform, colō, 3, -uī, cultus.
 perhaps, fortasse.
 permit, permittō, 3, -mīsī, -missus.
 permitted, it is, licet, 2, -uit (-itum).
 pernicious, perniciosus, -a, -um.
 Perses, Persēs, -ae, m.
 Persians, Persae, -ārum, m.
 persist, persevērō, 1.
 persuade, persuādeō, 2, -sī, -sus.
 physician, medicus, -ī, m.
 Picenian, Picēnus, -a, -um.
 pierce through, trānsfigō, 3, -fīxī, -fixus.
 pity, n., misericordia, -ae, f.
 pity, v., miseret, 2, -uit (*impers.*).
 place, n., locus, -ī, m.
 place, v., pōnō, 3, posuī, positus.
 plainly, plānē.
 plan, ratiō, -ōnis, f.
 planet, stella, -ae, f.
 play, fābula, -ae, f.
 plead, dīcō, 3, dīxī, dictus.
 pleasant, iūcundus, -a, -um.
 please, dēlectō, 1; *it pleases (impers.)*, libet, 2, -uit (-itum).
 pleasing, grātus, -a, -um.
 pleasure, voluptās, -ātis, f.
 plebs, plēbs, plēbis, f.
 plot, īnsidiae, -ārum, f.
 Pompey, Pompēius, -ī, m.
 Pontus, Pontus, -ī, m.
 poor, miser, -era, -erum; pauper, -eris.
 possessions, rēs, reī, f.; *get possession of*, potior, 4.
 post, locus, -ī, m.
 posterity, posteritās, -ātis, f.
 postpone, prōlātō, 1, —, —.
- power, potentia, -ae, f.; potestās, -ātis, f.; imperium, -ī, n.; vīs, vīs, f.; *have power, be powerful*, valeō, 2, -uī, -itūrus.
 powerful, potēns, -ntis.
 practice, ars, artis, f.
 praetor, praetor, -ōris, m.
 praise, n., laus, laudis, f.
 praise, v., laudō, 1.
 pray (*exclam.*), tandem; nam, *enclitic*.
 pray, ōrō, 1; (to) supplicō, 1.
 prayers, precēs, -um, f.
 precedent, exemplum, -ī, n.
 pre-eminent, excellēns, -ntis.
 prefer, praefērō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus.
 prepare, parō, 1; (for) apparō, 1.
 present, praesēns, -ntis.
 preserve, servō, 1.
 prestige, auctōritās, -ātis, f.
 pretend, simulō, 1.
 prevent, impediō, 4.
 pride, superbia, -ae, f.
 priest, sacerdos, -ōtis, m.
 proceed, pergō, 3, perrēxī, perrēctus; proficīscor, 3, -fectus.
 proclaim, praedicō, 1; pronūntiō, 1; renūntiō, 1.
 procure, comparō, 1.
 promise, polliceor, 2.
 prompt, promptus, -a, -um.
 properly, honestē.
 propitiate, plācō, 1.
 propose, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus.
 prosperity, secundae (-ārum), rēs (rērum).
 protect, tueor, 2, tūtus (tuitus).
 protection, fidēs, -eī, f.
 provided (that), dum modo.
 province, prōvincia, -ae, f.

provoked, be, exārdēscō, 3, -ārsī, -ārsus.

public, pūblicus, -a, -um.

publish, concelebrō, 1.

Publius, Publius, -ī, M.

punish, multō, 1; mactō, 1,

punishment, poena, -ae, F.

purpose, cōnsilium, -ī, N.

pursue, insequor, 3, -cūtus.

pursuit, studium, -ī, N.

put (to death), interficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectus; (on board) impōnō, 3, -posuī, -positus.

Pyrrhus, Pyrrhus, -ī, M.

Pythia, Pŷthia, -ae, F.

Q

quaestor, quaestor, -ōris, M.

quickly, celeriter.

quickness, celeritās, -ātis, F.

quiet, quiētus, -a, -um.

Quintus, Quīntus, -ī, M.

Quirites, Quirītēs, -ium, M.

quite, satis.

R

raise, tollō, 3, sustulī, sublātus.

rampart, vāllum, -ī, N.

rapine, rapīna, -ae, F.

rashness, temeritās, -ātis, F.

rather, magis; potius.

read, legō, 3, lēgī, lēctus; (through) perlegō.

rear, tergam, -ī, N.

reason, causa, -ae, F.

receive, accipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptus; excipiō; suscipiō.

recite, recitō, 1.

recollection, recordātiō, -ōnis, F.

recourse, have, dēscendō, 3, -dī, -sus.

refit, reficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectus.

refuse, negō, 1.

regard, habeō, 2; *with regard to*, in.

reign, *n.*, rēgnum, -ī, N.

reign, *v.*, rēgnō, 1.

rejoice, laetor, 1.

relationship, cōgnātiō, -ōnis, F.

relieve, medeor, 2, —.

religious ceremonies, plur. of religiō, -ōnis, F.

relying upon, frētus, -a, -um.

remain, maneō, 2, -sī, -sus; *per-*maneō; restō, 1, -stitī.

remaining, reliquus, -a, -um.

remains, reliquiae, -arum, F.

remedy, remedium, -ī, N.

remember, memini, -isse; remi-nīscor, 3, —.

remove, dēmigrō, 1.

render, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus.

reply, respondeō, 2, -dī, -sus.

report, *n.*, fāma, -ae, F.

report, *v.*, dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus; renūntiō, 1.

republic, rēs pūblica, rei pūbli-cae, F.

repulse, repellō, 3, reppulī (re-pulī), -pulsus.

resign, sē abdicāre.

resolve, dēcernō, 3, -crēvī, -crē-tus.

resources, opēs, -um, F.

rest, *the rest*, cēteri, -ōrum, M; reliquī, -ōrum, M.; *rest of*, reliquus, -a, -um.

rest, *v.*, quiēscō, 3, quiēvī, -ētus.

retain, retineō, 2, -uī, -tentus.

retreat, sē recipere; cēdō, 3, cessī, cessus.

return, *n.*, reditus, -ūs, M.

return, *v. intr.*, redeō, -īre, -iī, -itus; revertor, 3, -sus (*perf.* usually revertī); *tr.* reddō, 3, -didī, -ditus.

reward, praemium, -ī, N.; fructus, -ūs, M.

Rhine, Rhēnus, -ī, M.

Rhone, Rhodanus, -ī, M.

rich, locuplēs, -ētis.

riches, divitiae, -ārum, F.

right, *n.*, iūs, iūris, N.

right hand, dextra, -ae, F.

rightly, rēctē.

river, flūmen, -inis, N.

road, via, -ae, F.

Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um.

Rome, Rōma, -ae, F.

Romulus, Rōmulus, -ī, M.

rouse, excitō, 1.

ruin, adflīgō, 3, -īxī, -īctus.

rumor, rūmor, -ōris, M.

rush, ruō, 3, ruī, rutus.

S

Sabines, Sabīnī, -ōrum, M.

sacred, sacer, -cra, -crum.

sad, trīstis, -e.

safe, salvus, -a, -um.

safety, salūs, -ūtis, F.

sail, vēlum, -ī, N.

sake; *for the sake*, causā; grātiā.

sally, ēruptiō, -ōnis, F.

salute, salūtō, 1.

same, idem, eadem, idem; *at the same time*, simul.

Sardis, Sardēs, -ium, F.

satisfy, satisfaciō, 3, fēcī, factus.

Saturn, Sātarnus, -ī, M.

say, dicō, 3; loquor, 3, -cūtus.

scatter, sē ēicere.

Scipio, Scīpiō, -ōnis, M.

scourge, verberō, 1.

scout, explōrator, -ōris, M.

sea, mare, -is, N.

second, secundus, -a, -um.

secondly, deinde; *a second time*, iterum.

secure, pariō, 3, peperī, partus.

see, videō, 2, vīdī, visus; cernō, 3, crēvī, crētus; cōspicor, 1.

seek, petō, 3, -īvī, (īī) -ītus; quaerō, 3, -sīvī, -sītus; requirō.

seem, videor, 2, visus.

self, ipse, -a, -um; *pers. pron.*

senate, senātus, -ūs, M.

senator, senātor, -ōris, M.

send, mittō, 3, misī, missus; (*forward*) praemittō; (*out*) ēmittō.

sense, sēnsus, -ūs, M.

seriously, graviter.

Sertorius, Sertōrius, -ī, M.

service, *plur.* beneficia, -ōrum, N.

set (*before*) prōpōnō, 3, -posuī, -positus; (*out*) proficiscor, 3, -fectus; (*up*) ērigō, 3, -rēxī, -rēctus; īnstituō, 3, -uī, -ūtus.

settlement, compositiō, -ōnis, F.

seventh, septimus, -a, -um.

several, complūrēs, -a (-ia).

severe, gravis, -e.

shame; *it shames, etc.*, pudet, 2, -uit.

share, commūnicō, 1.

shield, scūtum, -ī, N.

ship, nāvis, -is, F.

short, brevis, -e.

shortly, prope diem.

show, doceō, 2, -uī, -tus; ostendō, 3, -dī, -tus.

shower, imber, -bris, M.

shun, fugiō, 3, fugī.

- Sicily, Sicilia, -ae, F.
 side, latus, -eris, N.
 siege, oppugnātiō, -ōnis, F.
 sight, cōspectus, -ūs, M.; *catch sight of*, cōspiciō, 3, -spēxi, -spectus.
 signal, signum, -ī, N.
 silence, silentium, -ī, N.
 silent, be, taceō, 2.
 similarly, similiter.
 since, cum; quoniam.
 single, singulī, -ae, -a.
 sit on, insideō, 2, -sēdī.
 sixth, sextus, -a, -um.
 skilled, perītus, -a, -um.
 slaughter, caedēs, -is, F.
 slave; *be a slave to*, serviō, 4.
 slay, interficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectus; necō, 1.
 sleep, somnium, -ī, N.
 slightly, leviter.
 small, parvus, -a, -um.
 snatch away, praeripiō, 3, -uī, -reptus.
 so, ita; sic; tam; *and so*, itaque;
 (*far*) tantum; (*many*) tot;
 (*much*) tantus, -a, -um.
 sober, sōbrius, -a, -um.
 soil, ager, agrī, M.
 soldier, mīles, -itis, M.
 solstice, winter, brūma, -ae, F.
 some, aliquis (-quī), -qua, -quid (-quod); nōnnūllī, -ae, -a; quis, quae, quid (quod); *some . . . others*, aliī . . . aliī.
 sometimes, interdum; nōnnumson, filius, -ī, M. [quam.
 song, carmen, -inis, N.
 soon; *as soon as*, ubi primum; *as soon as possible*, quam primum.
 sooner, prius.
- soothsayer, haruspex, -icis, M.
 soul, animus, -ī, M.
 Spain, Hispānia, -ae, F.
 Spaniard, Hispānus, -ī, M.
 spare, parcō, 3, pepercī, parsus.
 sparing, parcus, -a, -um.
 speak, dicō, 3; loquor, 3, -cūtus.
 spirit, animus, -ī, M.
 spirited, fortis, -e.
 splendid, amplus, -a, -um.
 spread, pandō, 3, -ī, passus.
 spring, vēr, vēris, N.
 stand, stō, 1, stetī, status; cōnsistō, 3, -stitī, -stitus.
 standard, sīgnum, -ī, N.
 start, proficiō, 3, -fectus.
 state, civitās, -ātis, F.; rēs publica, rei publicae, F.
 station, conlocō, 1; cōstituō, 3, -uī, -ūtus.
 statue, simulācrum, -ī, N.; statua, -ae, F.
 stay, maneō, 2, -sī, -sus; remaneō; moror, 1; commoror, 1.
 step-mother, noverca, -ae, F.
 still, tamen.
 stipulate, pacīscor, 3, pactus.
 strange, mīrus, -a, -um.
 strategy, cōsilium, -ī, N.
 strength, vīs, vīs, F.
 strengthen, firmō, 1.
 strike (icō), 3, icī, ictus; (*from*) executiō, 3, -cussī, -cussus.
 strong, be, valeō, 2, -uī, -itūrus.
 strongly, valdē.
 study, studium, -ī, N.
 stunned, be, stupeō, 2, -uī.
 stupefied, attonitus, -a, -um.
 subdue, subigō, 3, -ēgī, -āctus; (*thoroughly*), perdomō, 1, -uī, -itus.

successful, prosperus, -a, -um.
 succession, in, continuus, -a, -um.
 such, tālis, -e; (= so great) tantus, -a, -um.
 suddenly, repente.
 Suevi, Suēvī, -ōrum, M.
 suffer (*punishment*), dō, dare, dedī, datus.
 Sulla, Sulla, -ae, M.
 sun, sōl, -is, M.
 superior, be, antecellō, 3, —, —.
 suppliant, supplex, -icis, C.
 suppose, existimō, 1.
 surpass, antecellō, 3, —, —; superō, 1.
 suspicion, suspiciō, -ōnis, F.
 swear, iūrō, 1.
 sweet, dulcis, -e.
 swiftness, vēlōcitās, -ātis, F.
 swim, nō, 1, nāvī.
 sword, gladius, -ī, M.; ferrum, -ī, N.; ēnsis, -is, M.
 Syracusans, Syrācūsānī, -ōrum, M.

T

take, sūmō, 3, -psī, -ptus; expūgnō, 1; (away) ēripiō, 3, -uī, -reptus; adimō, 3, -ēmī, -ēemptus; (up) attingō, 3, -tigī, -tāctus; (it hard) molestē ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus.
 talent, talentum, -ī, N.
 talk, loquor, 3, -cūtus.
 tamper with, tentō, 1.
 Tarpeia, Tarpēia, -ae, F.
 tear, lacrima, -ae, F.
 tell, dicō, 3, dixī, dictus; doceō, 2, -uī, -tus.

temperance, temperantia, -ae, F.
 temple (*of the head*), tempus, -oris, N.
 ten, decem.
 tenfold, decemplex, -icis.
 Terentia, Terentia, -ae, F.
 territory, ager, -grī, M.
 than, quam.
 that, conj., ut (uti); quā; nē; quō *w. comp.*; *introducing ind. disc. not translated*; demon. pron., is, ea, id; ille, -a, -ud; (of yours) iste, -a, -ud; *rel. pron.*, quī, quae, quod.
 Themistocles, Themistoclēs, -is, M.
 themselves, suī.
 then, tum; igitur.
 there, ibi; *as expletive not trans.*
 therefore, itaque; igitur.
 Thermopylae, Thermopylae, -ārum, F.
 these, plur. of ille, -a, -ud.
 thigh, femur, -oris, N.
 thing, rēs, rei, F.
 think, existimō, 1; iūdicō, 1; putō, 1; sentiō, 4, -sī, -sus; (out) excōgitō, 1.
 thirty, trīgintā.
 this, hīc, haec, hōc.
 thither, eō.
 thou, tū, tuī.
 though, cum; *implied in participle.*
 thousand, mille.
 three, trēs, tria.
 three hundred, trecentī, -ae, -a.
 through, throughout, per; *abl.*
 throw into disorder, perturbō, 1.
 Thucydides, Thūcŷdidēs, -is, M.
 Tiberius, Tiberius, -ī, M.

till, dum.
time, tempus, -oris, N.; (of life)
 aetās, -ātis, F.; *at some time*,
 aliquandō; *at that time*, tum;
at the time of, sub.
timid, timidus, -a, -um.
Titus, Titus, -ī, M.
to, *dative*; ut; *prep.*, ad; in.
to-day, hodiē.
together, inter sē, etc.
toil, labor, -ōris, M.
tongue, lingua, -ae, F.
top of, summus, -a, -um.
towards, in.
town, oppidum, -ī, N.; urbs, -is, F.
train, exerceō, 2, -uī, -itus.
traitor, prōditor, -ōris, M.
Trajan, Trāianus, -ī, M.
Tralles, Trallēs, -ium, F.
tranquil, tranquillus, -a, -um.
transplant, trādūcō, 3.
traveller, viātor, -ōris, M.
treachery, prōditiō, -ōnis, F.;
 dolum, -ī, N.
treat, agō, 3, ēgī, āctus; tractō, 1.
tree, arbor, -oris, F.
Treviri, Trevirī, -ōrum, M.
trial, iūdicium, -ī, N.; labor, -ōris, M.
tribune, tribūnus, -ī, M.
triumph, triumphō, 1.
troops, cōpiae, -ārum, F.
troubled, turbidus, -a, -um.
true, vērus, -a, -um.
trust, permittō, 3, -mīsī, missus;
 crēdō, 3, -didī, -ditus; (in) cōn-
 fidō, 3, -fisus.
truth, in, vērō.
try, experior, 4, -pertus; tentō, 1.
Tullus, Tullus, -ī, M.
turn, convertō, 3, -tī, -sus; sē
 vertere.

turn, in, in vicem.
Turnus, Turnus, -ī, M.
twentieth, vicēsīmus, -a, -um.
two, duo, -ae, -o.
tyrant, tyrannus, -ī, M.
Tyrtaeus, Tyrtaeus, -ī, M.

U

Ubi, Ubī, -ōrum, M.
unavenged, inultus, -a, -um.
unbend, relaxor, 1.
uncertain, incertus, -a, -um.
uncovered, dētēctus, -a, -um.
understand, intellegō, 3.
undertake, suscipiō, 3, -cēpī,
 -ceptus; excipiō.
undertaking, inceptum, -ī, N.
unfavorable, inīquus, -a, -um; *be*
unfavorable to, invidēō, 2, -vīdī,
 -vīsus.
ungodly, impius, -a, -um.
ungrateful, ingrātus, -a, -um.
unite, sē coniungere.
unjustly, iniūriōsē.
unless, nisi.
unpopularity, invidia, -ae, F.
unprepared, imparātus, -a, -um.
unwilling, invītus, -a, -um; *be*
unwilling, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.
unwittingly, imprūdēns, -ntis.
urge, adhortor, 1.
usage, īnstitutum, -ī, N.
use, ūsus, -ūs, M.
use, ūtor, 3, ūsus.
useful, ūtilis, -e.

V

vain, in, frūstrā; nēquīquam.
valor, virtūs, -ūtis, F.
Verres, Verrēs, -is, M.

vessel, nāvīgium, -ī, N.
 victor, victor, -ōris, M.
 victorious, victor, -ōris.
 victory, victōria, -ae, F.
 vigorously, ācriter.
 village, vīcus, -ī, M.
 violent, ferōx, -ōcis.
 violently, ācriter.
 visit, adeō, -īre, -īī, -itus.
 virtue, virtūs, -ūtis, F.
 voice, vōx, vōcis, F.
 vote, sententia, -ae, F.; suffrāgium,
 -ī, N.

W

wage, gerō, 3, gessī, gestus.
 wait for, expectō, 1.
 walk, incēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessus.
 wall, mūrus, -ī, M.; moenia,
 -ium, N.
 war, bellum, ī, N.
 warlike, bellicōsus, -a, -um.
 waste, corrumpō, 3, -rūpī, -ruptus.
 watchful, vigilāns, -antis.
 way, iter, itineris, N.; via, -ae, F.
 we, nōs, nostrūm (-ī).
 weak, infirmus, -a, -um; aeger,
 -gra, -grum.
 wealthy, locuplēs, -ētis.
 wear, gerō, 3, gessī, gestus.
 weary, be, taedet, 2, -uit; per-
 tacsum est.
 weather, tempestās, -ātis, F.
 weigh (*of anchors*), tollō, 3, sus-
 tulī, sublātus.
 weight, pondus, -eris, N.
 welcome, recipiō, 3, -cēpī, -cep-
 tus.
 welfare, rēs, rei, F.
 well-regulated, bene īnstitūtus,
 -a, -um.

what, quī, quae, quod (quid); id
 quod; quālis, -e.
 whatever, quisquis, —, quid-
 quid, (quic-).
 when, cum; ubi.
 whence, quā rē.
 where, ubi.
 wherefore, quam ob rem; quā rē.
 whether, -ne; utrum; *whether*
 . . . *or*, sive . . . *sive*; utrum . . .
 an.
 which, qui, quae, quod; (*of two*)
 uter, utra, utrum.
 while, dum; dōnec.
 whither, quō.
 whithersoever, quōcumque.
 who, *rel.*, quī, quae; *interrog.*,
 quis, quae.
 whole, tōtus, -a, -um; omnis, -e;
 ūniversus, -a, -um.
 wholly, *adj. for adv.*, tōtus, -a,
 -um.
 why, cūr.
 wide, lātus, -a, -um.
 wife, coniunx (-iux), -iugis, F.;
 uxor, -ōris, F.
 wine, vīnum, -ī, N.
 winter, hiems, hiemis, F.
 winter-quarters, hiberna, -ōrum,
 wisdom, cōnsilium, -ī, N. [N.
 wise, sapiēns, -ntis.
 wisely, sapienter.
 wish, volō, velle, voluī; cupiō, 3,
 -īvī, -ītus.
 with, apud; cum.
 withdraw, concēdō, 3, -cessī, -ces-
 sus; sē recipere.
 within, intrā.
 without, sine; *be without*, vacō, 1.
 withstand, sustineō, 2, -uī, -ten-
 tus.

woman, mulier, -eris, F.
 wonder at, mīror, 1.
 wont, be, soleō, 2, -itus.
 wood, silva, -ae, F.
 word, verbum, -ī, N.
 world, orbis (-is, M.) terrārum.
 worthy, dīgnus, -a, -um.
 would rather, mālō, mälle, mālūi.
 would that, utinam.
 wound, *n.*, volnus, -eris, N.
 wound, *v.*, vulnerō, 1.
 wrath, īra, -ae, F.
 write, scribō, 3, -psī, -ptus.
 writings, litterae, -ārum, F.
 wrong, facinus, -oris, N.

X

Xerxes, Xerxēs, -is, M.

Y

year, annus, -ī, M.
yes, immō.
yet, tamen; adhūc.
yield, cēdō, 3, cessī, cessus.
yoke, iugum, -ī, N.
you, *sing.*, tū, tuī; *plur.*, vōs, vestrūm (-ī).
younger, minor [nātū], -ōris.
young, young man, adulēscēns, -ntis; iuvenis, -e.
your, *sing.*, tuus, -a, -um; *plur.*, vester, -tra, -trum; (self) tē; (selves) vōs.
youth, adulēscēntia, -ae, F.; iuventūs, -ūtis, F.

COLLEGE ENTRANCE EXAMINATION PAPERS.

HARVARD, JUNE, 1896.

While this was going on, Cæsar waited outside the walls: but when Cicero had been forced by the violence of Clodius to go into exile, Cæsar set out without delay for his province, and travelled with such speed that he reached Geneva, which is about eight hundred miles from Rome, in eight days. For he had received word that the Helvetians were preparing to migrate from their country in search of larger territory to dwell in, and he was afraid they would do much harm to the province if he should allow them to enter it. He therefore ordered the bridge which was at Geneva to be torn down, and made a requisition on the province for troops. The Helvetians, who had now assembled on the other side of the Rhone, on hearing of Cæsar's arrival sent envoys to ask him to allow them to proceed through the province, because there was no other way by which they could go. Cæsar told the envoys he needed time to consider the matter; if they would come back on the thirteenth of April, he would give them his answer.

HARVARD, SEPTEMBER, 1896.

The famous orator Cicero has left us an excellent speech in defence of the poet Archias. Although he was

born at Antioch in Asia, Archias came to Italy when he was still a young man, and lived there for many years. He wished to become a citizen of Heraclea, and since the people of Heraclea thought him worthy of this honor he was enrolled as a citizen. Not long after this when a law had been passed that no foreigner who was not a citizen should live at Rome, a man named Gratius said that Archias had not been legally enrolled, and tried to drive him out of the city. Cicero spoke in defence of the poet, and said that even if he were not a citizen he deserved to be made one. He also brought forward as a witness Lucius Lucullus, who said that he had been present when Archias was enrolled, and after this testimony had been heard, nobody doubted that Archias was a citizen.

YALE, JUNE, 1895.

On the eighth of November, B.C. 63, the consul Cicero asked Catiline in the senate whether he did not know that all had learned that he had conspired against the state. "All your plans," he said, "are now clearer to me than the light of day: you met your confederates at Læca's house night before last: you chose men to leave at Rome to burn the city and murder the optimates: you yourself, after killing me, intend to go to the army which Manlius is now collecting for you in Etruria. You ought to have been killed long ago by the command of the consul, but I will permit you to go: nay, I advise you to do so."

Catiline, attempting to reply, was prevented by the shouts of the senators, and rushed out, asserting that he

was going to Marseilles into exile: but in reality he went to the camp of Manlius, and a year later fell fighting bravely.

WELLESLEY, JUNE, 1896.

Render into Latin the following passage:—

The Helvetians, whether that they thought the Romans were retiring because they were afraid, or that they trusted to be able to cut them off from their supplies, altered their plan, and, changing their line of march, began to follow up and harass our men on the rear. When Cæsar perceived this, he withdrew his forces to the nearest hill, and sent the cavalry to sustain the onset of the enemy. He himself meanwhile drew up four veteran legions in triple line midway up the hill. On the crest of the hill he ordered the two legions lately levied in hither Gaul and all the auxiliaries to be stationed, the soldiers' packs to be brought together into one place, and that place to be defended by those who occupied the upper line.

Change the following passage from *indirect* to *direct discourse*:—

(Ei legationi Ariovistus respondit):—

Si quid ipsi a Caesare opus esset, sese ad eum venturum fuisse; si quid ille se velit, illum ad se venire oportere. Praeterea se neque sine exercitu in eas partes Galliae venire audere, quas Caesar possideret, neque exercitum sine magno comœatu atque molimento in unum locum contrahere posse.

Change the following passage from *direct* to *indirect discourse*:—

(Quae tecum, Catilina, sic agit et quodam modo tacita loquitur):—

Nullum jam aliquot annis facinus exstitit nisi per te, nullum flagitium sine te: tibi uni multorum civium neces, tibi vexatio direptioque sociorum impunita fuit ac libera: tu non solum ad negligendas leges et quaestiones, verum etiam ad evertendas perfringendasque valuisti.

UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO, JUNE, 1895.

Elementary.

Translate into Latin (marking all long vowels):—

1. Cæsar ordered the centurions to advance with all their soldiers into battle. (Express this (1) with *iubere*, (2) with *imperare*.)
2. Pompey was informed by scouts that his forces were no longer able to hold the position which they had taken the day before.
3. The soldiers could not be persuaded to renew the battle, but, throwing away their arms, fled, some in one direction, others in another.
4. (a) We must take this city. (Express in two ways.)
 (b) Cæsar ought not to go to Rome. (Express in two ways.)
 (c) May the ambassadors come into the senate to ask aid?
 (d) Do not lead your forces into camp without the command of the consul.

5. (a) We do not know why Cæsar has advanced into Gaul.
- (b) Cæsar decided to cross the river before the enemy should recover from their fear.
- (c) If these things were true, it would be better to send men ahead to destroy the bridge.

Advanced.

NOTE.—Do not attempt to render the English into Latin word for word, but grasp clearly each thought, and consider what is the Latin way of expressing this thought.

Translate into Latin (marking all long vowels):—

So grateful was Pompey for Cicero's support, that he called him, in the Senate, "the saviour of the world." Cicero was delighted with this praise, and began to look to Pompey as an ally. "You caution me about Pompey," he wrote to Atticus. "Do not suppose that I am becoming his friend for my own protection; but the state of things is such, that, if we two disagree, the worst misfortunes may be feared. I yield to him in nothing, but seek to make him better; and now he speaks more highly by far of my actions than of his own. He says that he has merely done well, while I have saved the state. . . . You cannot love Cato more than I love him, but he does only harm. He speaks as if he were living in Plato's Republic, and not in the ruins of the state Romulus founded."

CORNELL, 1895.

Napoleon saw that the enemies' forces were increasing and their courage rising. His own troops, exhausted by heat and fatigue, were hard pressed by (a) fresh and

unwearyed (host), and were struggling in vain against superior numbers. He accordingly advanced from the rising ground where he had long been watching¹ the issue of the fight, called round him the Old Guard,² which it was his habit to reserve for the last crisis³ of the battle, and addressed them thus. . . .

The candidate will seek to cast the extract in periodic form.

LELAND STANFORD, JR., UNIVERSITY, 1896.

Elementary.

1. The battle raged fiercely from nine o'clock till three. 2. Men are glad to believe what they wish. 3. If I had not ordered Catiline to go into exile, the Senate would have called me timid. 4. Cæsar led his forces across the river in order to attack the enemy in the rear. 5. Since the number of the enemy was increasing day by day, he thought he must not hesitate to engage in battle. 6. If you wish to recover your ambassadors, send our hostages back to us. 7. When these facts were reported to Crassus, he determined to make an attack upon the enemy's camp the next day. 8. On the right wing; in front; on the march; at the foot of the mountain; after the battle; under the leadership of Cæsar; at last; I fear that; about sunset; at early dawn; at the beginning of summer.

Advanced.

I see there are two opinions. One, that of Silanus, who thinks that those who have attempted to destroy all these

¹ *expectare.*

² *veterani:*

³ *discrimen.*

things should be punished with death; the other, that of Cæsar, who holds that death was not appointed by the gods as a punishment, and therefore recommends (*iubere*) imprisonment for life. It is for my interest to favor the proposition of Cæsar and thus avoid danger, but the advantage to the state should outweigh (*vincere*) all considerations of danger. I therefore declare that a man who has attempted to deprive his fellow citizen of life shall not enjoy life. If you adopt the proposal of Silanus, I shall not fear the charge of cruelty, for what cruelty can there be in punishing with death a man who is an enemy of the republic. If we do not put Lentulus to death, we shall be regarded cruel.

PRINCETON, JUNE, 1896.

1. When this conspiracy was divulged to the Helvetians, they tried to compel Orgetorix to plead his cause under arrest; but he, by bringing to the trial a great number of men, effected his escape.

Or,

They said that they would hardly arrive before night even if they started at dawn, because the bridge which used to span the river near the old temple had recently been destroyed, while the other road was so bad that they could not go fast there.

2. If I should say that I had done these things alone, without the help of the gods, I should be beside myself. Does it not seem to have happened providentially that Lentulus was so foolish as to entrust the letters to the Gauls?

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA, JUNE, 1891.

Subject 6.

1. The boy is very like his father.
2. The Samnites¹ are persuaded of this.
3. It is incredible² how tired of the business³ I am.
4. He hates me because I am luckier⁴ than he.
5. We will wait⁵ until you arrive.⁶
6. He spoke⁷ as if he knew.
7. Why (he asked) did they fear, or why did they despair of their own valor or his⁸ care.⁹
8. Tullius says that if men were wise,¹⁰ they would be honest.¹¹

AUGUST, 1896.

Subject 7.

A few days ago I met in Rome Cato, the Censor, which day, I remember, was the 19th of April. As soon as he saw me, he began to speak of the growing power of Carthage, which has almost recovered from the former war. In fact, he said he should not cease to fear that city until he should have learned of its utter destruction. "O that our young Scipio," said he, "might soon finish the work begun by his grandfather."

UNIVERSITY OF NORTH CAROLINA, 1896.

When Ariovistus learned that Cæsar was approaching his camp, he drew up all his forces, foot and horse, in

¹ *Samnites.*

⁴ *felicior.*

⁷ *loqui.*

¹⁰ *sapere.*

² *incredibilis.*

⁵ *expectare.*

⁸ *ipse.*

¹¹ *probi.*

³ *negotium.*

⁶ *advenire.*

⁹ *diligentia.*

battle array and delivered them an address. Meanwhile he sent scouts to find out where the Romans were encamped, and bade them tell the neighboring tribes that he was hastening toward them and would soon defeat the enemy.

UNIVERSITY OF PENNSYLVANIA, SEPTEMBER, 1896.

Translate into Latin (if a Latin word is unknown, indicate case or mood required in blank):—

When (cum) Cæsar inquired about the character (nature) and customs of the Nervii, he found that they were very brave; that they allowed (suffered) no wine to be imported, because they thought they would be demoralized (minds weakened) by it.

Hearing (use clause: Ubi . . .) that the Nervii five days before had encamped on-the-other-side-of the river, our men feared that the enemy would break up (move) camp, if they learned of Cæsar's arrival. While the enemy were awaiting (use participle) the arrival of their allies, our cavalry crossed the river by night and attacked them in the rear. But the Nervii fought so bravely that our men were soon put to flight.

UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN.

Translate into idiomatic Latin:—

When the Aduatuci, of whom I have spoken above, were coming to the assistance of the Nervii with all their forces, receiving a report of this battle they returned home; having deserted all their towns and strongholds, they brought all their property together into one town well fortified by nature.

What is there, Catiline, which can longer give you pleasure in this city, in which there is no one, outside of your conspiracy of desperadoes, who does not fear you, no one who does not hate you?

If we ourselves were not able to touch or taste these things, yet we ought to admire them, even when seeing them in others.



TABLE OF SYNONYMS.

NOTE.—This table contains only such words as are needed in the exercises. It is intended merely as an introduction to the study of synonyms, and is adapted as far as possible to preparatory students.

ABANDON. See LEAVE.

ACCOUNT: ON ACCOUNT OF.—*ob*: denoting the object in view.—*causā*: denoting the purpose in view.—*propter* (*prope*, *near*): denoting a proximate cause or motive.—*ablative of cause*: chiefly with verbs of emotion.

ACQUAINTED (*be*). See KNOW.

ADMIT. See CONFESS.

AFRAID. See FEAR.

AGAIN.—*iterum*: a second time.—*rūrsus*: of any repetition.—*re*: prefix of many verbs.

AID.—*auxilium*: usually sudden and external assistance to those struggling.—*subsidium*: against the time of need; the reserve.—*praesidium*: protecting aid; guard, garrison, etc.

ALL.—*omnis*: all without exception; opp. to *nūlli*, *paucī*, etc. (*number*).—*tōtus*: whole, entire; opp. to separate parts (*quantity*).—*ūniversus*: all taken collectively; opp. to single.

ALLOW.—*patior*: to suffer (*patiently*), to tolerate.—*concēdō*: to yield on entreaty; opp. to *repūgnō*.—*permittō*: of one's own free will; opp. to *vetō*.—*licet* = it is lawful.

ALMOST.—*ferē*: about, generally; especially of number and time.—*paene*, *prope*, nearly, but not quite.

ALSO.—*etiam* emphasizes and strengthens.—*quoque* (*postpositive*) adds a new thought.—*īdem* repeats or emphasizes the subject in a coördinate clause.—*item*: in like manner.

ANCIENT. See OLD.

AND.—*et* connects words and expressions of equal importance.—*-que* (*enclitic*) joins a word closely to another.—*atque* (*āc*) adds what is of more importance.

ANY; ANY ONE, ANY THING.—*ūllus*, adj., *quisquam*, noun: with a negation expressed or implied.—*aliquis*: some one or other.—*quis*: fainter than *aliquis*; usually after *sī*, *nisi*, *nō*, and *num*.—*quīvis*: any you please.

APPOINT. See **CALL.**

ARMS.—*arma*: the general term.—*tēla*: missiles.

ARMY.—*exercitus*: as a trained body, the general term.—*āgmen*: on the march, troops.—*aciēs*: in battle array; line of battle.

ASK.—*rogō*: general term; to ask for an answer or opinion.—*ōrō*: stronger word; to beg, pray, entreat.—*obsecrō*: to conjure by all that is holy.—*implōrō*: to entreat with tears.—*petō*: to seek to obtain something by request or demand.—*postulō*: to demand as of right.—*flāgitō*, *efflāgitō*: to demand earnestly or impatiently.—*quaerō*, *requirō*: to search out with a view of getting definite information.

ASSISTANCE. See **AID.**

AT ONCE. See **IMMEDIATELY.**

ATTACK.—*adeō*, *aggredior*: to approach with hostile intent.—*adorior*: the same, but generally of a sudden attack.—*petō*: to aim at, rush upon, especially with a sword.—*impetum faciō*: of a violent attack.—*oppūgnō*: oftenest of attacking a town.

ATTEMPT.—*cōnor*: to try with energy.—*experior*: with a view to learn by experiment.—*tentō*: to try, prove, test.

AVENGE. See **PUNISH.**

BATTLE.—*pūgna*: the general word for any kind of a conflict.—*aciēs*: the conflict of two armies in battle array.—*proelium*: skirmish, engagement; of separate divisions of an army.

BECAUSE OF. See **ACCOUNT.**

BEG. See **ASK.**

BEGIN.—*ineō*: to enter upon, engage in.—*initium capiō (faciō)*: similar to *ineō*.—*incipiō*: to take in hand; with tenses of incomplete action.—*coepi*: the same; with tenses of completed action.—*īstituō*: (to put in place), undertake.—*ordior*: to begin, as opposed to advancing.

BESEECH. See **ASK.**

BESIEGE.—*obsidō*: by regular works.—*oppūgnō*: by assault or storm.—*expūgnō*: to besiege successfully.

BID.—**iubeō**: the general word.—**imperō**: by virtue of power vested in one.—**mandō**: to charge or commission.—**praescribō**: to prescribe, dictate; of a superior to an inferior.—**praesum**: to be at the head of, have charge of.—**praecipio**: by right of authority.

BURN.—**incendō**: to set on fire, kindle.—**inflammō**: with bright flames.—**combūrō, exūrō**: to burn up, consume.

BUT.—**sed** simply corrects or alters what precedes.—**at**: the strongest adversative.—**autem**: a weak adversative; carries on a train of thought.—**vērūm, vērō**: in truth; affirms the truth or importance of an assertion.—**nisi** = except.

CALL.—**appellō**: to address one by his title.—**nōminō**: to name; to give a thing an appropriate name.—**vocō**: to call by name, to summon.—**dīcō**: to call anything according to what it is.—**cōnstituō**: to appoint.

CHILDREN.—**puerī**: boys and girls with regard to age.—**liberī**: offspring in relation to parents.

CLAIM (see also **ASK**).—**dēposcō**: with urgency.—**repetō**: by entreaty.—**vindicō**: to lay claim to, claim as one's own.

COMMAND. See **BID**.

CONFESS.—**fateor**: general term, implying that one is asked.—**confiteor**: to acknowledge what one cannot conceal any longer.

CONQUER.—**vincō**: implies exertion to conquer opposition.—**superō**: (to rise above) surpass in any way.—**pellō**: to rout, put to flight.—**opprimō**: to crush.

CONTEND. See **FIGHT**.

COUNCIL.—**concilium**: a meeting called together for taking counsel.—**consilium**: the same, but with stress laid on the thought of deliberation and decision.—**conventus**: a private meeting.

COURSE.—**via**: the road, street, way, in a concrete sense.—**iter**: the journey; the way in an abstract sense, or the way leading to a particular point.

CRIME.—**maleficium**: a visible effect of malicious intention.—**facinus**: a daring crime.—**scelus**: an offence against others, against society.

CUSTOM.—**consuetūdō**: arising from inclination or convenience.—**mōs**: arising from the dictates of reason, right, virtue, and decorum.—**īnstitūtum**: of what is sanctioned by law or general consent.

- DAILY: DAY BY DAY.** — *cottīdiē* (adj. *cottīdiānus*): applies to things that are daily repeated. — *in diēs*: applies to things that increase or decrease from day to day.
- DEATH.** — *mors*: natural death; the general term. — *interitus*: violent death.
- DECIDE.** — *statuō*, *cōstituō*: to decide unsettled or disputed points. — *cēnsēō*: to decide with authority, as of the senate. — *dēcernō*: to decide as the result of consultation or deliberation. — *discernō*: to decide by discriminating.
- DECLARE.** — *dēclarō*: to make clear, evident, manifest. — *ostendō*: to display, expose to view. — *profiteor*: to make public. — *doceō*: to give information. — *indicō*: used of a formal declaration of war.
- DECREE.** — *cōsultum*: the decree which embodies the action of a deliberative body. — *dēcrētum*: the decision of a magistrate, court, or senate. — *ēdictum*: the proclamation of a magistrate.
- DEEM.** See **THINK**.
- DEFEAT.** See **CONQUER**.
- DEMAND.** See **ASK**.
- DESERT.** See **LEAVE**.
- DESIRE.** See **WISH**.
- DETERMINE.** See **DECIDE**.
- DISCERN.** See **SEE**.
- DISCLOSE.** — *pronūntiō*: to state publicly. — *enūntiō*: to reveal what should be kept secret. — *indicō*: to point out, inform. — *patefaciō*: to reveal a crime, plot, etc.
- DISCOVER** (see also **FIND**). — *comperiō*: to obtain knowledge of, ascertain. — *dēprehendō*: used especially of finding something wrong. — *patefaciō*: see **DISCLOSE**.
- DISTINGUISHED.** See **NOBLE**.
- DWELL.** See **LIVE**.
- EDICT.** See **DECREE**.
- EITHER . . . OR.** — *aut . . . aut*: used when one member of an alternative excludes the other. — *vel . . . vel*: used when there is a choice. *sive . . . sive*: used when it is immaterial which is taken.
- EMPLOY.** See **USE**.
- ENDURE.** See **SUFFER**.

- ENEMY.**—*hostis*: a public enemy.—*inimicus*: a private enemy.
- ESPECIALLY.**—*imprimis*: among the first, particularly, preëminently.—*māximē*: in the highest degree, exceedingly.—*praesertim*: mostly used before *cum* and *si*.—*eximiē*: uncommonly, very much.
- ETERNAL.**—*sempiternus*: lasting as long as time itself.—*aeternus*: outlasting all time; without beginning or end.
- EXCEL.** See **SURPASS.**
- FAIL.** See **WANT.**
- FEAR.**—*metuō*: implies a fear based on precaution, deliberation, and circumspection.—*timeō*: a fear arising from weakness or cowardice.—*extimēscō*, *pertimēscō*: to be thoroughly frightened.—*vereor*: implies awe or dread, also hesitation.
- FIGHT.**—*pūgnō*: denotes a formal, intentional battle, requiring skill and courage.—*dīmicō*: used especially with reference to a speedy determination, and to what is at stake.—*proelior*: with reference to military movements.—*certō*: to match, vie with; implying great exertion.—*dēcertō*: with the added notion of persevering to the end.—*contendō*: to measure strength.
- FINALLY.**—*postrēmō*, *ad extrēmum*: of that which is last.—*dēnique*: used at the end of an enumeration.—*tandem*: implying the end of long delay or expectation.
- FIND; FIND OUT.**—*inveniō*: to come upon by chance.—*reperiō*, *resciscō*: to find by seeking.—*comperiō*: to find with certainty.—*nanciscor*: to light upon, meet with.—*cōgnōscō*: to learn by inquiry and investigation.—*intellegō*: to understand.—*perspiciō*: to ascertain by close inspection.—*sentiō*: to find by the effects of anything, by experience.
- FIRE.**—*ignis*: the general word.—*flamma*: blazing fire.—*incendium*: conflagration.
- FIRST.**—*princeps*: first in order, rank, or fame.—*primus*: first in time.—*primō* (adv.): the order beyond the control of the speaker or writer.—*primum* (adv.): the order within the control of the speaker or writer.
- FORSAKE.** See **LEAVE.**
- FORTHWITH.** See **IMMEDIATELY.**

GREAT. — *māgnus*: the general word; opp. to *parvus*. — *grandis*, *amplus*: with the added notion of becoming or imposing greatness. — *ingēns* denotes excessive greatness; huge, immense.

GUARD. See **AID**.

GUILT. See **CRIME**.

HABIT. See **CUSTOM**.

HAPPEN. — *fiō*: the general word. — *accidō*: used of unexpected, generally unfortunate, occurrences. — *contingō*, *obtingō*: generally of fortunate occurrences.

HELP. See **AID**.

HINDER. — *impediō*: to entangle, hamper, embarrass. — *prohibeō*: to keep off, hold back, restrain. — *dēterreō*: to frighten off, discourage, deter. — *intercludō*: to shut off, shut out, block up.

HOME. — *domus*: the general word. — *domicilium*: often used of one's legal residence. — *sēdēs*: where one sits or abides; abode.

IMMEDIATELY. — *statim*: on the spot; opp. to *deinde*. — *cōfestim*: with all speed. — *continuō*: without any time intervening. — *prōtinus*: right on, without pause. See also **SUDDENLY**.

IMPEND. See **THREATEN**.

INHABIT. See **LIVE**.

JUDGE. See **THINK**.

KEEP. See **HINDER**.

KILL. — *interficiō*: in any manner whatever; the general word. — *caedō*, *occidō*: to cut down, especially in open battle. — *trucidō*: to butcher in a bloodthirsty way. — *necō*: to destroy by wicked or cruel means.

KINDNESS. — *beneficium*: favors shown, services rendered. — *clēmēntia*: gentleness, forbearance, indulgence.

KNOW. — *sciō*: to know, in the widest sense of the word. — *nōscō*, *cōgnōscō*: to become acquainted with, to learn by external marks or characteristics. — *intellegō*: to understand, comprehend, see into. — *sentiō*: to discern by the senses.

LABOR. — *opus*: as skilful or accomplishing its purpose; the result of labor. — *opera*: implying free will and desire to serve. — *labor*: toil, exertion (in its disagreeable aspect).

LACK. See **WANT**.

LARGE. See **GREAT**.

LAST. — **últimus**: most remote in time or space; opp. to **proximus**. — **extrēmus**: the outermost part of a space, or of a period of time; opp. **medius**. — **postrēmus**: the last in order; opp. **prīmus**. — **suprēmus** (**summus**): the highest, best, last (in time). — **proximus**: immediately preceding, as "last night."

LAW. — **iūs**: an entire body of laws; rightful authority, justice. — **lex**: a special enactment.

LEARN. See **FIND**.

LEAVE. — **relinquō**: to go away from, leave behind; without any secondary implication. — **dēserō** implies leaving in the lurch in a cowardly or disloyal manner. — **abiciō**, **prōiciō**, **dēpōnō**: to leave what one does not find it advisable or profitable to keep. — **ēgredior**, **excēdō**, **discēdō**: to depart, go away. — **dēsistō**: to desist from.

LET. See **ALLOW**.

LINE. See **ARMY**.

LIVE. — **habitō**: the general term; to reside, commonly of individuals. — **incolō**: mostly used of a people. — **vivō** has the various meanings of the Eng. "live."

LONG. — **diū**: through a long space of time; opp. **paulisper**. — **dūdum** (generally with **iam**): formerly; opp. **modo**. — **prīdem**: a long time ago; opp. **nūper**.

LOVE. — **amō**: the general term; to love from inclination or passion. — **diligō**: to love from choice, esteem, and respect.

MADNESS. — **āmentia**: want of sense, intellectual blindness. — **furor**: blind rage, frenzy.

MAN. — **homō**: the general term; man as distinguished from other animals. — **vir**: man with reference to his good qualities. — **is**: often used when a relative clause follows.

MIND. — **animus**: mind as opp. to body, soul, heart. — **mēns**: the thinking faculty, intellect.

MORE. — **plūs** has reference to quality. — **magis** has reference to quality or degree. — **amplius** denotes an increase (of time or space); longer, further.

MOUND. — **agger**: a pile heaped up (artificially); **tumulus** (swelling): a natural mound, hillock; also a sepulchral mound.

MURDER. See KILL.

MUST. — *necesse est*: obligation imposed by nature or necessity. — *dēbeō*: moral obligation based upon duty to one's self (subjective). — *oportet*: moral obligation based upon duty to others (objective). — *ndum est*: general colorless way of expressing obligation.

NAME. See CALL.

NECESSARY. See MUST.

NEED. See WANT.

NEIGHBORS. — *vīcīnī*: with reference to house or premises. — *finītimī*: separated by a boundary.

NOBLE. — *nōbilis*: in reference to birth, family. — *clārus, praeclārus*: for eminent services to one's country. — *summus*: high in rank or dignity.

OBTAIN. — *adipīscor*: to acquire something desirable. — *adsequor, cōsequor*: to gain by overtaking, to attain to. — *impetrō*: to get through strong entreaty.

OLD. — *antīquus*: that which existed long ago. — *vetus*: that which has existed for a long time; often "good old." — *prīscus*: primitive; stronger than *antīquus*.

OPINION. — *opīniō*: an uncertain, indefinite view. — *sententia*: a well-considered view.

OR. — *aut, vel, sive*. See EITHER. — *an*: used only in double questions.

ORDER. See BID.

OTHER. — *alter*: the other of two. — *alius*: of more than two. — *cēterī*: the rest, all the others. — *reliquus*: what remains out of the whole.

OUGHT. See MUST.

OVERCOME, OVERPOWER. See CONQUER.

PEOPLE. — *populus*: all the people as a political whole. — *plēbs*: the lower class in contrast with the nobles. — *volgus*: the ignorant rabble, the mob. — *hominēs*: general term; men and women.

PERMIT. See ALLOW.

PLAN. — *cōnsīllium*: project, design. — *ratīō*: course for carrying out any enterprise.

POOR.—**miser**: to be pitied.—**egēns**: destitute.—**pauper**: in humble circumstances.

POWER.—**potestās**: official power.—**facultās**: ability in general.—**imperium**: chiefly military power; supreme authority.—**opēs**: influence, resources, means.—**vīs**: strength, physical or moral.—**cōpiae**: the power that lies in money or soldiers.—**robur**: power to resist attack, firmness.—**dominātiō**: absolute, tyrannical sway.

PREVENT. See **HINDER**.

PUNISH.—**animadvertō**: a judicial term; to take cognizance of.—**vindicō, ulciscor**: to take vengeance for, avenge.—**multō**: to punish by a fine or other judicial infliction.—**pūniō**: to take vengeance into one's own hands.

RELIEF. See **AID**.

REQUEST. See **ASK**.

RESERVE. See **AID**.

REST. See **OTHER**.

REWARD.—**praemium**: as a mark of favor.—**mercēs**: wages, price paid, bribe.

RIGHT.—**fās**: according to divine law.—**iūs**: according to human law. See **LAW**.

ROUTE. See **COURSE**.

RUIN.—**calamitās**: loss, disaster.—**perniciōs**: destruction, death.—**pestis**: plague, pestilence, death.—**ruīna**: a (violent) falling down, downfall.

SAFE.—**tūtus**: free from danger.—**salvus**: having escaped from danger.—**incolumis**: unhurt, unimpaired.

SAKE. See **ACCOUNT**.

SAY.—**loquor**: to talk; used of the language of conversation.—**dīcō**: to give expression to thought.—**inquam**: mostly used parenthetically in direct quotations.—**āiō**: to give one's opinion; to say "Yes," usually in indirect quotations.—**negō**: to say "No," deny.

SEE.—**videō**: general term.—**perspiciō, cōspiciō**: to look at attentively, discern.—**cernō** (to separate): to behold clearly, discern.—**sentiō**: to discern by the senses, feel.

SEEK. See ASK.

SHOW. See DECLARE.

SLAY. See KILL.

SO. — *adeō*: to such a degree. — *tam*: used with adjs. and advs. — *ita, sic*: used with verbs; *ita* generally refers to what precedes, *sic* to what follows.

SPEAK. See SAY.

SPIRIT. See MIND.

STATE. — *cīvitās*: the state as a body of citizens. — *rēs pūblica*: with reference to its constitution and administration.

STATUE. — *sīgnum, simulācrum*: usually of a god. — *statua*: usually of a man.

STORM. See BESIEGE.

STRENGTH. See POWER.

SUDDENLY. — *repente, repentīnō*: of what is unexpected. — *subitō*: of what is unforeseen.

SUFFER. — *patior*: general term; endure. — *perferō*: to bear through to the end. — *subeō*: to undergo. — *doleō*: to feel pain.

SUMMON. — *vocō*: general term; to call. — *convocō*: to call together, assemble. — *arcessō*: to cause to approach, invite.

SURPASS. — *praecēdō*: to go before, outstrip. — *antecellō*: to be prominent, superior to. — *praestō*: to stand at the head of. — *superō*: to rise above, be superior to.

TAKE PLACE. See HAPPEN.

TELL. See SAY.

THANK. — *grātiām habeō*: to feel thankful. — *grātiās agō*: to express one's thanks in words. — *grātiām referō*: to express one's thanks in deeds.

THINK. — *cōgitō*: to consider thoroughly, ponder. — *arbitror*: to hold an opinion as an arbiter or judge. — *existimō*: to judge the value of anything as an appraiser. — *iūdicō*: to decide formally as a judge. — *putō*: to form an opinion after due examination. — *opinor*: to have an impression, as a mere sentiment or conjecture. The last two used of merely private opinion.

THREATEN. — *minitor*: to utter threatening words, try to frighten. — *impendeō*: to hang over, impend. — *immineō*: to be dangerously near to.

TRY. See ATTEMPT.

UNDERGO. See **SUFFER.**

UNDERSTAND. See **KNOW.**

USE.—**ūtor**: general term; to make use of.—**ūsūrpō**: to appropriate, practise.—**adhibeō**: to apply to a purpose.

VAIN (IN).—**frūstrā**: refers to the person disappointed.—**nēquīquam**: refers to the failure of result.

WALL.—**mūrus**: general term.—**moenia**: walls of a city, ramparts.—**pariēs**: of a house.

WANT.—**careō**: to be without; opp. **habeō**.—**egeō**: to be in absolute need.—**opus est**: there is need of, use for.—**dēsum**: to be wanting in, fail in.

WAY. See **COURSE.**

WEAPONS. See **ARMS.**

WHOLE. See **ALL.**

WISH.—**volō**: general term for exercise of the will.—**cupiō** expresses a strong, passionate desire.—**dēsiderō**: to long for, miss.

WORD.—**vōx**: a sound of the voice; verbal utterance.—**verbum**: word with reference to the thought.

WORK. See **LABOR.**

WRONG. See **CRIME.**

GRAMMATICAL INDEX.

NOTE.—The grammars referred to are Allen and Greenough's (A.), Bennett's (B.), Gildersleeve's (G.), and Harkness's (H.). Other references are to the sections in Parts I., II., and III., where the subjects are specially treated. The pupil is advised, for his own convenience, to underscore the references to his particular grammar.

Ablative.

1. Absolute. A. 255; B. 227; G. 409-10; H. 431.—I. 2, 9, 25, 57, 87.—II. 13, 32, 33.—III. 18, 22.
2. Of accompaniment or attendance. A. 248, 7; B. 222; G. 392; H. 419, I. and 1.—I. 82.—II. 30.—III. 17.
3. In accordance with. A. 253, n.; B. 220, 3; G. 397; H. 416.—I. 40, 72, 119.—II. 76, 3.
4. Of agent. A. 246; B. 216; G. 401; H. 415, I.—I. 22, 46.—II. 35.—III. 16.
5. Of cause. A. 245; B. 219; G. 408; H. 416.—I. 14, 5, 40, 102, 2, 119, 2.—II. 10, 54.—III. 17.
6. Of comparison. A. 247; B. 217; G. 398; H. 417.—I. 52.—II. 11.—III. 16.
7. Of degree or measure of difference. A. 250; B. 223; G. 403; H. 423.—I. 14, 42, 52.—II. 31.—III. 5, 8, 18.
8. With *dignus*, etc. A. 245, a; B. 226, 2; G. 397, 2; H. 421, III.—II. 42.—III. 18.
9. With *frētus*, etc. A. 254, b, 2; B. 218, 3; G. 401, n. 6; H. 425, 1, n.—I. 84, 121, 4.—II. 26, 68, 4.
10. Of manner. A. 248; B. 220; G. 399; H. 419, III.—I. 20, 56.—II. 21, 47.—III. 8, 3, 17.
11. Of means or instrument. A. 248, 8; B. 218; G. 401; H. 420.—I. 64, 98.—II. 18, 56.—III. 17.
12. With *nitor*, etc. A. 254, b; B. 218, 3; G. 401, n. 6; H. 425, 1, n.—I. 13.
13. With *opus* and *usus*. A. 243, e; B. 218, 2; G. 406; H. 414, IV.—I. 53, 10.
14. Of place in which or where. A. 258, 4; B. 228; G. 385-9; H. 425.—I. 15, 100, 126, 4.—II. 52.—III. 19.

15. Of place from which. A. 258; B. 229; G. 390-1; H. 412. — I. 15, 100, 103, 3. — II. 65, 4. — III. 19.
16. With words of plenty and want. A. 243, 248, c, 2; B. 214, 218, 8; G. 405; H. 421, II., 414. — II. 24, 68, 3.
17. Of price. A. 252; B. 225; G. 404; H. 422. — I. 18. — III. 18.
18. Of quality or characteristic. A. 251; B. 224; G. 400; H. 419, II. — I. 6, 58, 105, 3. — II. 53, 61. — III. 18.
19. Of separation. A. 243; B. 214; G. 390; H. 414. — I. 15, 99. — II. 5, 9, 12. — III. 16.
20. Of source or origin and material. A. 244; B. 215; G. 395-6; H. 415. — I. 91. — II. 75, 1. — III. 16.
21. Of specification or respect. A. 253; B. 226; G. 397; H. 424. — I. 78, 102. — II. 23. — III. 2, 7, 18.
22. Of time. A. 256; B. 230-1; G. 393; H. 429. — I. 6, 21, 73. — II. 4, 34. — III. 19.
23. Of the way by which. A. 258, g; B. 218, 9; G. 389; H. 420, 1, 3). — I. 103, 4, 116, 1. — II. 17, 6. — III. 20.
24. With *utor*, etc. A. 249; B. 218, 1; G. 407; H. 421, I. — I. 16, 66, 100. — II. 28, 44. — III. 7, 3, 17.

Accusatiye.

25. Adverbial. A. 240, a and b; B. 176, 3; G. 333; H. 378, 2. — I. 17, 123, 2. — II. 4, 2. — III. 8.
26. Cognate. A. 238 and b; B. 176, 4; G. 333 and 2; H. 371, II. — I. 29. — II. 69, 3. — III. 8.
27. Direct object. A. 237; B. 172 ff.; G. 330; H. 371. Illustrations frequent.
28. In exclamations. A. 240, d; B. 183; G. 343, I.; H. 381. — II. 17, 66. 4. — III. 8.
29. Of extent and duration. A. 256-7; B. 181; G. 335-6; H. 379. — I. 51, 80, 88. — II. 60. — III. 9.
30. Of limit or end of motion. Terminal. A. 258, b; B. 182; G. 337; H. 380. — I. 28. — II. 19, 53. — III. 3, 3, 9.
31. Subject of infinitive. A. 173, 2; B. 184; G. 343, 2; H. 536. — I. 5, 49. — II. 36, 58. — III. 2, 3, 1.
32. Of specification or respect. Greek acc. A. 240, c; B. 185; G. 338; H. 378. — III. 8, 12, 12.
33. With verbs of feeling or emotion. A. 221, b; B. 209; G. 377; H. 409, III. — I. 89. — II. 48.

Two accusatives. Double accusative.

34. Same person or thing. Pred. acc. A. 239, a; B. 177; G. 340; H. 373. — I. 108, 3. — II. 12, 42. — III. 1.

35. Person and thing. Secondary object. A. 239, 2, c; B. 178; G. 339; H. 374. — III. 1.
36. With compounds of *trāns*, etc. A. 239, 2, b, and notes; B. 179; G. 331, R. 1; H. 376 and n. — I. 122, 3.
- Adjectives (adjective pronouns and participles).**
37. Agreement with nouns. A. 186-7; B. 234; G. 211; H. 438-9. — I. 70, 102, 4.
38. With two or more nouns of different genders. A. 187; B. 235, B; G. 285-6; H. 439 ff. — II. 59, 10, 69, 1. — III. 4.
39. Denoting a part. A. 193; B. 241, 1; G. 291, R. 2; H. 440, 2, n. 1. — I. 21, 115, 1, 116, 3. — III. 4, 5, 6.
40. As adverbs. A. 191; B. 239; G. 325, R. 6; H. 443. — I. 29, 83. — II. 7, 13. — III. 4.
41. As nouns. A. 188-9; B. 236-7; G. 204; H. 441. — I. 48. — II. 59. III. 4.
42. **Adverbs.** A. 207; B. 140; G. 440; H. 551-3. Illustrations frequent.
- Agreement.** See Adjectives and Apposition.
43. Of relative with antecedent. A. 198-9; B. 250; G. 614; H. 445. — I. 75. — II. 27, 31, 4. — III. 5.
44. Of verb with subject. A. 204-5; B. 254; G. 211; H. 460-2. — I. 70.
45. Of verb with two or more subjects. A. 205; B. 255; G. 285-7; H. 463. — II. 69, 3.
46. **Alius** and **alter**. A. 203; B. 253; G. 319; H. 459. — I. 24, 45, 10, 127, 2. — II. 37, 5.
47. **Amplius**, etc., without *quam*. A. 247, c; B. 217, 3; G. 296, 4; H. 417, 1, n. 2. — I. 59. — III. 9, 5.
- Antecedent** in rel. clause. See 148.
- Antequam.** See 171.
48. **Apposition.** A. 183-4; B. 169; G. 320-1; H. 363-4. — I. 47. — II. 1. — III. 1.
- Arrangement.** See Order, 122.
- Causal clauses.**
49. With *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, and *quandō*. A. 321; B. 286; G. 539-42; H. 516. — I. 93, 105, 1, 112. — II. 14, 32, 69, 1. — III. 13, 3, 28.
50. With *cum*. A. 326; B. 286, 2; G. 586; H. 517. — I. 68. — II. 5, 4, 24, 67, 1. — III. 28.
51. With the relative. A. 320, e; B. 283, 3; G. 633; H. 517. — I. 33, 96, 114, 3. — II. 14, 32, 12, 59. — III. 5, 7, 27.
52. **Concessive and adversative clauses.** A. 313; B. 308-9; G. 603-9; H. 515. — I. 101. — II. 25, 4, 74. — III. 33. See 61 and 150.

Conditional sentences.

53. First form or type; logical; pres., past, fut. (*more vivid*). A. 306-7; B. 302; G. 595; H. 508.—I. 43, 54.—II. 9, 13, 6, 16, 55.—III. 30.
54. Second form or type; ideal; fut. (*less vivid*). A. 307, 2; B. 303; G. 596; H. 509.—I. 43, 85.—II. 8, 44, 8, 55.—III. 30.
55. Third form or type; unreal; contrary to fact. A. 308; B. 304; G. 597; H. 510.—II. 7, 20, 11, 33, 55.—III. 23, 6, 30.
56. In indirect discourse. A. 337; B. 319-21; G. 656-9; H. 527.—I. 103, 4, 121.—II. 65, 1.—III. 32.
57. Condition omitted. A. 311; G. 600.—II. 66, 4.—III. 31.
58. Of comparison (conclusion omitted). A. 312; B. 307; G. 602; H. 513, II.—III. 31.
59. **Conjunctions.** A. 208; B. 341-6; G. 474 ff.; H. 554-5.
60. **Conjunctions repeated or omitted.** A. 208, *b*, 1, 2; B. 341, 4; G. 481; H. 554, I. 6.—I. 26, 78, 9, 98, 3.—II. 76.—III. 4, 4, 5.

Consecutive clauses. See Result.**Cum.**

Causal. See 50.

61. Concessive. A. 313, *d*; B. 309, 3; G. 587; H. 515, III.—I. 91, 110, 3, 119, 3.—II. 31, 57.—III. 28.

Temporal and historical. See 172.

Dative.

62. With adjectives. A. 234; B. 192; G. 359; H. 391.—I. 30, 71.—III. 15.
63. Of agent. A. 232; B. 189; G. 354-5; H. 388.—I. 11, 61, 97.—II. 7, 25.—III. 14, 23.
64. With compounds. A. 228; B. 187, III; G. 347; H. 386.—I. 10, 67, 81, 93.—II. 6, 22, 40.—III. 13.
65. Ethical. A. 236; B. 188, 2, *b*; G. 351; H. 389.—II. 15, 12.—III. 15.
66. Of indirect object. A. 225-6; B. 187; G. 345-6; H. 384 ff.—II. 22.—III. 13. Illustrations frequent.
67. Of possessor. A. 231; B. 190; G. 349; H. 387.—I. 90.—II. 49.—III. 14.
68. Of purpose, end or object for which. A. 233; B. 191; G. 356; H. 390.—I. 23, 66, 117, 1, 128, 2.—II. 50.—III. 14.
69. Of reference, influence or interest. A. 235; B. 188; G. 352; H. 384, 1, 1), 2), 4.—I. 26.—II. 6, 13, 7, 14, 14.—III. 15.
70. Of separation. A. 229; B. 188, 2, *d*; G. 347, 5; H. 385, II. 2.—I. 38, 9, 65, 110, 3.—II. 7.—III. 14, 31, 2.
71. With special verbs. A. 227; B. 187, II.; G. 346; H. 385.—I. 2, 27, 55, 80.—II. 35, 38.—III. 5, 3, 13.

72. **Dum** with pres. ind. A. 276, 3; B. 293; G. 570; H. 467, 4. — I. 41.
Dum, donec, and quoad (until). See 174.
73. **Dum, modo, etc.**, in clauses of proviso. A. 314; B. 310; G. 573;
 H. 513, I. — II. 63, 2. — III. 33.
74. **Emphasis.** A. 344; B. 349; G. 672, 2, (a); H. 561. — I. 7, 69. — II.
 10, 11, 21. — III. 9.
Final clauses. See Purpose.
75. **Fore ut** with subj. for fut. inf. A. 288, f.; B. 270, 3; G. 248; H.
 537, 3. — I. 124, 1. — II. 15, 8, 77, 1.
Genitive.
76. With adjectives. A. 218; B. 204; G. 374; H. 399. — I. 21, 5, 84. —
 II. 31. — III. 11.
77. In apposition with poss. pron. A. 184, d; G. 321, 2; H. 363, 4, 1.
 — II. 40, 1.
78. Of quality; descriptive. A. 215; B. 203; G. 365; H. 396, V. — I.
 58, 125, 4. — II. 61, 70, 4. — III. 3, 5, 10.
79. Of measure. A. 215, b; B. 203, 2; G. 365, 2; H. 396, V. — I.
 8, 60.
80. Objective. A. 217; B. 200; G. 363, 2; H. 395, III. — I. 32. — III. 11.
81. Partitive; of the whole. A. 216; B. 201; G. 367-72; H. 397. —
 I. 53, 63, 108, 3. — II. 4, 43. — III. 10.
82. Possessive. A. 214, 1; B. 198; G. 362; H. 396, I. — I. 63. — II. 41.
 III. 10.
83. Of price or value. A. 252, a; B. 203, 3; G. 379; H. 404. — I. 96. —
 II. 20.
84. Subjective. A. 214; B. 199; G. 363; H. 396, II. — III. 10.
85. With *interest* and *rēfert*. A. 222; B. 211; G. 381; H. 406, III. —
 I. 50. — II. 43. — III. 12.
86. With verbs of feeling or emotion. A. 221; B. 209; G. 377; H. 406,
 I. 409, III. — I. 89. — II. 48. — III. 12.
87. With judicial verbs; of charge and penalty. A. 220; B. 208; G.
 378; H. 409, II. — II. 2, 62, 3. — III. 11, 18, 4.
88. With verbs of memory. A. 219; B. 206; G. 376; H. 406, II. —
 I. 13, 9, 14. — II. 3, 2, 39. — III. 10, 4, 11.
89. With verbs of plenty and want. A. 223; B. 212; G. 383; H. 410,
 V. 1. — III. 12.
Gerund and gerundive.
90. Genitive. A. 298; B. 338, 1, 339; G. 428; H. 542, I. 543 ff. — I. 37,
 41, 62. — II. 20. — III. 24.
91. Dative. A. 299; B. 338, 2, 339; G. 429; H. 542, II. 543 ff. — I. 76, 8.
 — III. 24.

92. Accusative. A. 300; B. 338, 3, 339; G. 430, 432; H. 542, III. 543 ff. — I. 13, 37, 62. — II. 36, 45. — III. 24.
93. Ablative. A. 301; B. 338, 4, 339; G. 431, 433; H. 542, IV. 543 ff. — I. 18, 115, 2. — II. 41, 72, 3.
94. **Historical present.** A. 276, *d*; B. 259, 3; G. 229; H. 467, III. Illustrations frequent.
95. **Iam, iam diū, etc., with pres. or imp. ind.** A. 276, *a*; B. 259, 4; G. 230; H. 467, III. 2. — II. 5, 19, 8, 62, 2, 65, 3.
96. **Imperative.** A. 269; B. 281; G. 266 ff.; H. 487. — I. 77. — II. 5. — III. 21.
97. **Imperative, future.** A. 269, *d, e*; B. 281, 1; G. 267 and R.; H. 487. — II. 16.
- Imperfect indicative.**
98. Of customary and repeated action. A. 277; B. 260, 2; G. 231, 233; H. 469, II. — I. 98, 120, 127, 3. — III. 20, 11, 22, 3.
99. Of attempted and continued action, etc. A. 277, *c*; B. 260, 3; G. 233; H. 469, 1. — I. 64. — II. 28, 33, 7, 69, 2.
100. **Impersonal verbs.** A. 146; B. 138; G. 208; H. 298 ff. — I. 4. — II. 15. — III. 12.
101. **Impersonal uses: passive of intransitive verbs.** A. 230; B. 187, II. *b*; G. 208, 2; H. 301, 1. — I. 24, 36, 55, 81, 97. — II. 38. — III. 13.
102. **In and sub with acc. and abl.** A. 153; B. 143; G. 418; H. 435. — I. 22. Illustrations frequent.
103. **Indicative.** A. 264; B. 271; G. 254; H. 474 ff.
104. Tenses of. A. 276 ff.; B. 257 ff.; G. 222 ff.; H. 466 ff.
105. In apodosis of unreal conditions. A. 308, *b, c*, 311, *c*; B. 304, 3 and *b*; G. 597, 2, 3; H. 511. — II. 33, 9. — III. 30, 9.
106. **Indirect discourse.** *Ōrātiō obliqua.* A. 336 ff.; B. 313 ff.; G. 508, 2, 648 ff.; H. 522 ff. — I. 49, 58, 95, 104, 5. — II. 3. — III. 3.
107. Informal or implied. A. 341; B. 323; G. 508, 3, 663, 2; H. 528, 1. — I. 118. — II. 69, 4. — III. 26, 2, 33.
108. Subordinate clauses in. A. 336, 2; B. 314-16; G. 650 ff.; H. 524. — I. 104, 4, 114, 2, 121. — II. 69. — III. 17, 2, 32.
- Conditional sentences in. See 56.
- Infinitive.**
109. Complementary. A. 271; B. 328; G. 423; H. 533. — I. 51, 75. — II. 23, 37. — III. 2.
110. As object. A. 272, 330, B; B. 331; G. 527, 532-3; H. 535. — III. 2.
111. As subject and predicate. A. 270; B. 327, 330; G. 422, 424, 535; H. 538, 539, I. — I. 4. — II. 29. — III. 2.

112. Historical. A. 275; B. 335; G. 647; H. 536, 1. — III. 3.
Subject of. See Accusative, 31.
113. Tenses of. A. 288, 336, A; B. 270; G. 281, 530-1; H. 537. — I. 5, 58, 95. — II. 3, 58. — III. 3.
114. Future, with verbs of promising, etc. A. 330 f.; B. 331; G. 423, 5. — I. 74. — II. 40, 63, 2. — III. 32, 7.
115. With *iubeō* and *vetō*. A. 331, a; B. 331, II.; G. 423, n. 6; H. 535, II. Illustrations frequent.
Interrogative sentences. See Questions.
116. Locative. A. 258, 4; B. 232; G. 411; H. 425, II. 426. — I. 88. — II. 8, 17, 19, 14, 52. — III. 3, 3, 19.
117. *Nō . . . quidem*. A. 345, b; B. 347, 1; G. 448, n. 2; H. 569, III. 2. Illustrations frequent.
Nominative.
118. Predicate. A. 176, 185; B. 167-8; G. 205-6, 325; H. 362. — I. 1. — II. 20, 42. — III. 1. Illustrations frequent.
119. Predicate after infinitive. A. 176, b; B. 167; G. 205-6; H. 536, 2, 1. — I. 109.
120. Subject. A. 173; B. 166; G. 203; H. 368. — I. 1. Illustrations frequent.
121. *Nostrūm* and *Vestrūm*. A. 194, b; B. 242, 2; G. 364, R; H. 446, n. 3. — II. 1, 11, 66, 2. — III. 12, 3.
122. Order of words. A. 343 ff.; B. 348 ff.; G. 671 ff.; H. 560 ff. — I. 7, 69. — II. 21. — III. 9.
123. Participles. A. 289 ff.; B. 336-7; G. 664 ff.; H. 548 ff. — I. 40, 57, 85, 87. — II. 2, 20, 13, 32. — III. 22, 23.
124. Equivalent to infinitive. A. 292, e; B. 337, 3; G. 536; H. 535, I. 4. — II. 44.
125. Perfect passive for Eng. perf. act. A. 290, d; G. 410, 1; H. 550, n. 4. — I. 12.
126. Tenses of. A. 290; B. 336; G. 282-3; H. 550. — III. 22, 23.
127. Periphrastic conjugation, first, or active. A. 129, 293, a; B. 115; G. 247; H. 233, 466, n. — I. 78. — II. 34. — III. 23.
128. Periphrastic conjugation, second, or passive. A. 129, 294, b; B. 115; G. 251; H. 234. — I. 34, 61, 125, 3. — II. 25, 38. — III. 23.
129. Personal construction for impersonal. A. 330, a, b, d; B. 332; G. 528; H. 534, 1. — II. 64, 2, 65, 2, 70, 4.
Postquam. See 175.
130. Prepositions. A. 152 ff.; B. 141 ff.; G. 412 ff.; H. 432 ff.
Priusquam. See 172.
131. Prohibitions. A. 269, a; B. 276; G. 272, 2; H. 484, 4. — I. 39, 12. — III. 21, 32, 3.

Pronouns. For Agreement, see 43.

132. Demonstrative and determinative. A. 100-2, 195; B. 246; G. 305-11; H. 450-2. — I. 106, 1. — III. 5.
 133. Indefinite. A. 202; B. 252; G. 313-19; H. 455-9. — III. 6.
 134. Interrogative. A. 104-5; B. 90; G. 106; H. 454.
 135. Personal. A. 194; B. 242; G. 304; H. 446.
 136. Possessive. A. 197; B. 243; G. 312; H. 447.
 137. Reflexive. A. 196; B. 244; G. 309; H. 448-9. — I. 108, 3. — III. 6.
 138. Relative. A. 197, 5-201; B. 250; G. 610 ff.; H. 453. — I. 75. — III. 5.

Proviso, clauses of, with *dum*, etc. See 73.

Purpose or final clauses.

139. Pure purpose with *ut* or *nē*. A. 317; B. 282; G. 545; H. 497, II. — I. 3, 86, 94, 122, 3. — II. 27, 68, 1. — III. 6, 25.
 140. With *quō*. A. 317, *b*; B. 282, *a*; G. 545, 2; H. 497, II. 2. — I. 80, 103, 5. — II. 70, 1.
 141. Substantive or complementary. A. 331; B. 295-6; G. 546-9; H. 498, 499, 3. — I. 19, 113, 3, 117, 2. — II. 51. — III. 25.
 142. After verbs of fearing. A. 331 f.; B. 296, 2; G. 550; H. 498, III. — I. 35, 38, 112, 1. — II. 2, 73, 4.
 143. Relative. A. 317, 2; B. 282, 2; G. 630; H. 497, I. — I. 31, 48, 96, 103, 2. — II. 25, 2, 30. — III. 25.

Purpose expressed by *ad* with acc. of gerund or gerundive. See 92.

By *causā* with gen. of gerund or gerundive. See 90.

By the supine. See 170.

Questions.

144. Direct. A. 210; B. 162; G. 453 ff.; H. 351. — I. 20. — II. 1. — III. 7.
 145. Double or disjunctive. A. 211; B. 162, 4; G. 458-9; H. 353. — I. 36, 44, 92, 125, 1. — II. 19, 7, 44, 125. — III. 7.
 146. Indirect. A. 334; B. 315; G. 460, 467; H. 529, I. — I. 29, 49, 104, 2. — II. 1. — III. 7.
 147. Interrogative particles, *-ne*, *nōnne*, and *num*. A. 210, *a*, *c*; B. 162, 2; G. 454-6; H. 351, 1, 2. — I. 20. — II. 1. — III. 7.

Quīn. See 158.

Quō. See 140.

Quod, quia, quoniam, quandō. See 49.

Relative clauses.

148. Antecedent in. A. 200; B. 251, 4; G. 616. — I. 104. — II. 26. — III. 5.
 Of cause or reason. See 51.

149. Of characteristic. A. 320; B. 283; G. 631, 2; H. 503, I.—I. 45, 90, 119, 3.—II. 6, 15, 6, 45, 62, 3.—III. 12, 9, 27. See 154.
150. Of concession or opposition. A. 320, *e*; B. 283, 3; G. 634; H. 515, III.—II. 74, 1.—III. 27.
151. With *dignus*, etc. A. 320 *f.*; B. 282, 3; G. 631, 1; H. 503, II. 2.—III. 27.
Of purpose or design. See 143.
Of result or tendency. See 156.
152. Of restriction and proviso. A. 320, *d*; B. 283, 5; G. 627, 1; H. 503, *n.* 1.—II. 46, 74, 1.—III. 27.
153. Position of. A. 201, *c*; G. 620; H. 572, II. *n.*—I. 104, 3, 109, 3.—II. 26, 9.—III. 5.
154. With *ūnus* and *sōlus*. A. 320, *b*; B. 283, 2; G. 631, 1; H. 503, II. 1.—I. 107, 5.—II. 35, 13, 45.—III. 27.
- Result or consecutive clauses.**
155. Pure result with *ut*, *ut nōn*, and *quīn*. A. 319; B. 284; G. 552; H. 500, II.—I. 28, 76, 115, 3.—II. 26.—III. 22, 2, 26.
156. Relative. A. 319, 2; B. 284, 2; G. 631; H. 500, I.—II. 12, 46, 7, 65, 2.—III. 26.
157. Substantive or complementary. A. 332; B. 297; G. 553; H. 501.—I. 10, 2, 99, 102, 2.—II. 71, 2.—III. 26.
158. With *quīn* after verbs of doubting, etc. A. 332, *g*; B. 298; G. 555-6; H. 504.—I. 3.—II. 68, 4.
159. Roman calendar. A. 259, *e*, 376; B. 371-2; G. p. 491; H. 641 *ff.*—I. 6.—II. 3.—III. 20.
160. Sequence of tenses. A. 285-7; B. 267-8; G. 509 *ff.*; H. 491 *ff.*—I. 17, 46, 76, 122, 1.—II. 46.—III. 6.
161. Perf. subj., after secondary tense. A. 287, *c*; B. 268, 6; G. 513; H. 495, VI.—I. 48, 12, 112, 4.—III. 26, 6.
- Subject.** See 31 and 120.
- Subjunctive.**
162. By attraction; of integral part. A. 342; B. 324; G. 663; H. 529, II.—I. 104, 4, 107, 3.—II. 15, 10, 30, 4, 69, 4.—III. 23, 11, 33.
163. Concessive. A. 313, *i*; B. 278; G. 264; H. 484, III.—II. 48, 74, 4.
164. Deliberative. A. 268; B. 277; G. 465-6; H. 484, V.—I. 39, 109, 3.—II. 39, 57.—III. 21.
165. Hortatory. A. 266; B. 274-5; G. 263; H. 484, II.—I. 77, 84, 99, 11.—II. 13, 18, 7, 42.—III. 14, 8, 21.
166. Optative. A. 267; B. 279; G. 260-1; H. 483-4.—II. 9, 13, 12, 64, 4.—III. 15, 7, 21.
167. Potential. A. 311, I.; B. 280; G. 257-9; H. 485-6.—II. 39, 46, 9, 56, 6, 66, 3, 76, 1.—III. 21, 31.

168. Tenses of. A. 283 ff.; B. 266 ff.; G. 277; H. 478 ff.
See also 49-52, 54-8, 61, 73, 107, 108, 139 ff., 146, 149-152, 155-8, 171-4.
Suī and suus. See 137.
169. Supine in um. A. 302; B. 340; G. 435; H. 546.—I. 11, 27, 10, 28, 7.—II. 63, 2.—III. 24.
170. Supine in ū. A. 303; B. 340, 2; G. 436; H. 547.—I. 99.—II. 12.—III. 24.
- Temporal Clauses.**
171. With *antequam* and *priusquam*. A. 327; B. 291-2; G. 574-7; H. 520.—I. 79, 92, 11, 124, 3.—II. 29.—III. 29.
172. With *cum*. A. 325; B. 288-9; G. 580, 585; H. 521.—I. 25, 59.—II. 6, 5, 19.—III. 9, 3, 28.
173. With *dum*, *dōnec*, and *quoad*. A. 328; B. 293; G. 571-2; H. 519.—I. 92, 124, 2.—III. 29.
174. With *postquam*, *ubi*, *ut*, etc. A. 324; B. 287; G. 561-3; H. 518.—I. 41, 12, 111, 3, 113, 2.—III. 29.
175. Time before or after an event. A. 259, *d*; B. 223, 357; G. 403, 4; H. 430.—I. 105.—II. 69, 1.—III. 20.
176. Ut omitted. A. 331 f., R. and *i*, n. 1 and 2; B. 295, 8; G. 546, R. 2, 553, 4, R. 1; H. 499, 2, 502, 1.—II. 15, 12.—III. 31, 5.
Vestrūm. See 121.
177. Vocative. A. 241; B. 171; G. 201, R. 1, 2; H. 369.



THE STUDENTS' SERIES OF LATIN CLASSICS.

UNDER THE EDITORIAL SUPERVISION OF

ERNEST MONDELL PEASE, A.M.,

Leland Stanford Junior University,

AND

HARRY THURSTON PECK, PH.D., L.H.D.,

Columbia College.

This Series contains the Latin authors usually read in American schools and colleges, and also others well adapted to class-room use, but not heretofore published in suitable editions. The several volumes are prepared by special editors, who aim to revise the text carefully and to edit it in the most serviceable manner. Where there are German editions of unusual merit, representing years of special study under the most favorable circumstances, these are used, with the consent of the foreign editor, as a basis for the American edition. In this way it is possible to bring out text-books of the highest excellence in a comparatively short period of time.

The editions are of two kinds, conforming to the different methods of studying Latin in our best institutions. Some contain in the introductions and commentary such a careful and minute treatment of the author's life, language, and style as to afford the means for a thorough appreciation of the author and his place in Latin literature. Others aim merely to assist the student to a good reading knowledge of the author, and have only the text and brief explanatory notes at the bottom of each page. The latter are particularly acceptable for sight reading, and for rapid reading after the minute study of an author or period in one of the fuller editions. For instance, after a class has read a play or two of Plautus and Terence carefully, with special reference to the peculiarities of style, language, metres, the methods of presenting a play, and the like, these editions will be admirably suited for the rapid reading of other plays.

The Series also contains various supplementary works prepared by competent scholars. Every effort is made to give the books a neat and attractive appearance.

The following volumes are now ready or in preparation:—

- CAESAR**, Gallic War, Books I-V. By HAROLD W. JOHNSTON, Ph.D., Professor in the Indiana University.
- CATULLUS**, Selections, based upon the edition of Riese. By THOMAS B. LINDSAY, Ph.D., Professor in Boston University.
- CICERO**, Select Orations. By B. L. D'OOGHE, A.M., Professor in the State Normal School, Ypsilanti, Mich.
- CICERO**, De Senectute et de Amicitia. By CHARLES E. BENNETT, A.M., Professor in the Cornell University. *Ready.*
- CICERO**, Tusculan Disputations, Books I and II. By Professor PECK.
- CICERO**, De Oratore, Book I, based upon the edition of Sorof. By W. B. OWEN, Ph.D., Professor in Lafayette College. *Ready.*
- CICERO**, Select Letters, based in part upon the edition of Süpfle-Böckel. By Professor PEASE.
- EUTROPIUS**, Selections. *Ready.*
- GELLIUS**, Selections. By Professor PECK.
- HORACE**, Odes and Epodes. By PAUL SHOREY, Ph.D., Professor in the Chicago University. *Ready.*
- HORACE**, Satires and Epistles, based upon the edition of Kiessling. By JAMES H. KIRKLAND, Ph.D., Professor in Vanderbilt University. *Ready.*
- JUVENAL**, Satires. By JAMES C. EGBERT, Jr., Ph.D., Adjunct Professor of Latin, and NELSON G. MCCREA, Ph.D., Instructor in Latin, Columbia University.
- LIVY**, Books XXI and XXII, based upon the edition of Wölflin. By JOHN K. LORD, Ph.D., Professor in Dartmouth College. *Ready.*
- LIVY**, Book I, for rapid reading. By Professor LORD. *Ready.*
- LUCRETIUS**, De Rerum Natura, Book III. By W. A. MERRILL, Ph.D., Professor in the University of California.
- MARTIAL**, Selections. By CHARLES KNAPP, Ph.D., Professor in Barnard College.
- NEPOS**, for rapid reading. By ISAAC FLAGG, Ph.D., Professor in the University of California. *Ready.*
- NEPOS**, Selections. By J. C. JONES, A.M., Professor in the University of Missouri.

- OVID, Selections from the Metamorphoses**, based upon the edition of Meuser-Egen. By B. L. WIGGINS, A.M., Professor in the University of the South.
- OVID, Selections**, for rapid reading. By A. L. BONDURANT, A.M., Professor in the University of Mississippi.
- PETRONIUS, Cena Trimalchionis**, based upon the edition of Bücheler. By W. E. WATERS, Ph.D., President of Wells College.
- PLAUTUS, Captivi**, for rapid reading. By GROVE E. BARBER, A.M., Professor in the University of Nebraska. *Ready.*
- PLAUTUS, Menaechmi**, based upon the edition of Brix. By HAROLD N. FOWLER, Ph.D., Professor in the Western Reserve University. *Ready.*
- PLINY, Select Letters**, for rapid reading. By SAMUEL BALL PLATNER, Ph.D., Professor in the Western Reserve University. *Ready.*
- QUINTILIAN, Book X and Selections from Book XII**, based upon the edition of Krüger.
- SALLUST, Catiline**, based upon the edition of Schmalz. By CHARLES G. HERBERMANN, Ph.D., LL.D., Professor in the College of the City of New York. *Ready.*
- SENECA, Select Letters**. By E. C. WINSLOW, A.M.
- TACITUS, Annals, Book I and Selections from Book II**, based upon the edition of Nipperdey-Andresen. By E. M. HYDE, Ph.D., Professor in Lehigh University.
- TACITUS, Agricola and Germania**, based upon the editions of Schweizer-Sidler and Dräger. By A. G. HOPKINS, Ph.D., Professor in Hamilton College. *Ready.*
- TACITUS, Histories, Book I and Selections from Books II-V**, based upon the edition of Wolff. By EDWARD H. SPIEKER, Ph.D., Professor in the Johns Hopkins University.
- TERENCE, Adelphoe**, for rapid reading. By WILLIAM L. COWLES, A.M., Professor in Amherst College. *Ready.*
- TERENCE, Phormio**, based upon the edition of Dziatzko. By HERBERT C. ELMER, Ph.D., Assistant Professor in the Cornell University. *Ready.*
- TIBULLUS AND PROPERTIUS, Selections**, based upon the edition of Jacoby. By HENRY F. BURTON, A.M., Professor in the University of Rochester.

- VALERIUS MAXIMUS, Fifty Selections**, for rapid reading. By CHARLES S. SMITH, A.M., Late College of New Jersey. *Ready.*
- VELLEIUS PATERCULUS, Historia Romana, Book II.** By F. E. ROCKWOOD, A.M., Professor in Bucknell University. *Ready.*
- VERGIL, Books I-VI.** By JAMES H. KIRKLAND, Ph.D., Professor of Latin, and WILLIAM H. KIRK, Ph.D., Instructor in Latin, Vanderbilt University.
- VERGIL, The Story of Turnus from Aen. VII-XII**, for rapid reading. By MOSES SLAUGHTER, Ph.D., Professor in University of Wisconsin. *Ready.*
- VIRI ROMAE, Selections.** With Prose Exercises. By G. M. WHICHER, A.M., Teachers' Normal College, New York City. *Ready.*
- LATIN COMPOSITION, for college use.** By WALTER MILLER, A.M., Professor in the Leland Stanford Jr. University. *Ready.*
- LATIN COMPOSITION, for advanced classes.** By H. R. FAIRCLOUGH, A.M., Professor in the Leland Stanford Jr. University.
- HAND-BOOK OF LATIN SYNONYMS.** By Mr. MILLER.
- A FIRST BOOK IN LATIN.** By HIRAM TUELL, A.M., late Principal of the Milton High School, Mass., and HAROLD N. FOWLER, Ph.D., Western Reserve University. *Ready.*
- A NEW LATIN COMPOSITION, for schools.** By M. GRANT DANIELL, A.M., formerly Principal of Chauncy Hall School, Boston. *Ready.*
- THE PRIVATE LIFE OF THE ROMANS**, a manual for the use of schools and colleges. By HARRIET WATERS PRESTON and LOUISE DODGE. *Ready.*
- GREEK AND ROMAN MYTHOLOGY**, based on the recent work of Steuding. By KARL P. HARRINGTON, A.M., Professor in the University of Maine, and HERBERT C. TOLMAN, Ph.D., Professor in Vanderbilt University. *Ready.*
- ATLAS ANTIQUUS**, twelve maps of the ancient world, for schools and colleges. By Dr. HENRY KIEPERT, M.R. Acad. Berlin. *Ready.*

Tentative arrangements have been made for other books not ready to be announced.

•••••

BENJ. H. SANBORN & CO., Publishers,
110 and 120 Boylston Street, Boston.





UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

THIS BOOK IS DUE ON THE LAST DATE
STAMPED BELOW

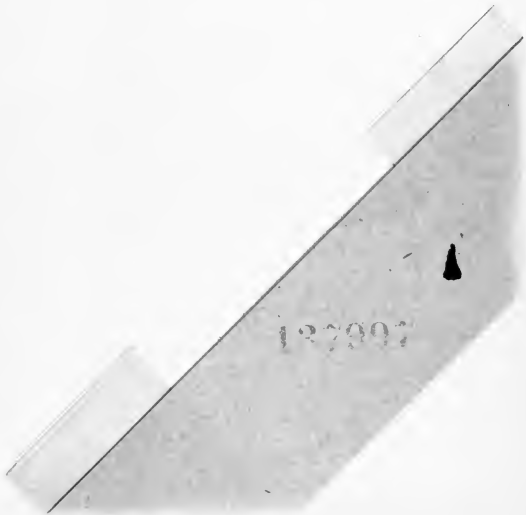
NOV 11 1914
JUL 20 1918
AUG 3 1918

18 81177

U. C. BERKELEY LIBRARIES



C045920259



127997

